FOREWORD

This manual will acquaint you with the operation and maintenance of your new vehicle. It will also provide you with important safety information. Read it carefully and follow the recommendations for the enjoyable, safe, and trouble-free operation of your vehicle.

Service will best be provided by your authorised Chevrolet repairer who knows your vehicle best and is dedicated to your complete satisfaction.

Please consider this manual a permanent part of your new car. It should remain with the vehicle at all times, including at time of resale.

Thank you for choosing Chevrolet.

IMPORTANT NOTICE

Please read this manual and follow the instructions carefully.



: This is the safety alert symbol used to alert you to potential hazards including injuries or damage to your vehicle or other property. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol.

Throughout this manual, you will find special notations:

- Warning
- Caution
- Note

WARNING

WARNING indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury or death.

A CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injuries, or damage to your vehicle or other property.

NOTE

NOTE indicates information which will assist you with maintenance or other instructions concerning your vehicle.

All information, illustrations, and specifications in this manual are based on the latest product information available at the time of publication.

We reserve the right to change specifications or designs at any time without notice and without incurring obligation.

This manual describes all options and features available for this model. Certain descriptions. including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.

Non-genuine parts and accessories have not been examined or approved by our company. We can certify neither the suitability nor the safety of non-genuine parts and accessories and are not liable for damage caused by their

Important: Read Section 1 ("Seats and Occupant Protection Systems") of this manual fully and carefully before operating your vehicle.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.	SEATS AND OCCUPANT PROTECTION SYSTEMS	1-1	
2.	INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS	2-1	
3.	DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE	3-1	
4.	CLIMATE CONTROL AND AUDIO SYSTEM	4-1	
5.	EMERGENCIES (Important information about what to do if you have a problem while driving)	5-1	
6.	SERVICE AND VEHICLE CARE. (Information about how to properly maintain your vehicle.)	6-1	
7.	VEHICLE MAINTENANCE (Information about vehicle maintenance)	7-1	
8.	TECHNICAL INFORMATION	8-1	
9.	NAVIGATION SYSTEM	9-1	
10.	INDEX	10-1	

SEATS AND OCCUPANT PROTECTION SYSTEMS

•	ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELTS1-2
•	FRONT SEAT OCCUPANTS1-6
•	REAR SEAT OCCUPANTS1-6
•	THIRD ROW SEAT OCCUPANTS1-6
•	THREE POINT SAFETY BELTS1-6
•	SAFETY BELT PRETENSIONER1-8
•	SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT1-9
•	PREGNANT WOMEN AND SAFETY BELTS1-10
•	CHILD RESTRAINT1-10

•	LOWER ANCHOR AND TOP TETHER ANCHOR FOR CHILD RESTRAINTS	1-12
•	HEAD RESTRAINTS	1-19
•	FRONT SEATS	. 1-20
•	ELECTRIC SEAT	. 1-23
•	REAR SEATS	. 1-24
•	SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (AIR BAG)	. 1-28

ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELTS!

Occupant protection has been the focus of much private and public research and development for many years. The two vehicle components which are incorporated into the vehicle solely for the protection of the occupants in vehicle accidents are the safety belts provided at each seating position and the supplemental restraint system, or air bags, provided at the driver and front passenger seat positions. The safety belts can protect you and your passengers only if they are used. The air bag is a supplemental protective device that is more effective and safer as a restraining device when the safety belts are being used.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. (See "SAFETY BELT WARNING LAMP" in the index for more information.)

WHY WEAR SAFETY BELTS?

Safety belts are helpful for several distinct reasons:

- Safety belts attach the occupants to the vehicle so that they will not be ejected during an accident.
- 2) Safety belts attach the occupant to the vehicle so that they can use the space between their pre-crash seating position and the front of the vehicle to slow down to a stop more gradually, as their safety belts stretch and the front end of the vehicle absorbs the energy of the crash by crumpling.
- Safety belts keep the driver in his seat, so that the driver might have a chance to regain control in certain accident situations.
- Safety belts keep occupants from being catapulted into and injuring the driver and other occupants.

WARNING

- Safety belts have been shown to be the single most effective protection against injury or death in a vehicular accident!
- As the owner and driver of your vehicle, you must make certain that each occupant is properly wearing the safety belt provided at the seating position.
- Pregnant women, injured, and physically impaired persons should also wear safety belts. Like all other occupants, they are more likely to suffer serious injury or death, if they do not do so.
- The best way to protect the feotus is to protect the mother.
- Why safety belts work, how to wear them, and how to adjust your seat position properly, is explained in this section. Read all of the information provided and always observe these instructions and warnings in order to gain the full benefit of these safety systems.

WHY SAFETY BELTS WORK!

Safety belts cannot work unless they are worn and worn properly.

Vehicle occupants are injured if the forces applied to the body's structures are greater than the body can tolerate without being injured. If a person's body is stopped abruptly, the forces applied to the body will be high, whereas if the body is slowed down gradually over some distance, the forces will be much lower. Thus, in order to protect an occupant from injury in a crash, the idea is to give the person as much time and distance as possible in coming to a stop.

Imagine a person running at 15 miles per hour (25 km/h) head first into a concrete wall. Imagine a second person running at 15 miles per hour into a wall covered by a 3-foot (90 cm) thick deformable cushion. In the first instance the person could be seriously injured or even killed. In the second, the runner could expect to walk away uninjured. Why? In the first instance, the body hit the non-yielding concrete surface and stopped immediately. All of the energy the sprinter built up was absorbed by the structures of the body, not by

the non-yielding concrete surface. In the second example, the body had exactly the same amount of energy that had to be absorbed as in the first example, but it continued to move into the padding, giving the body additional time and distance to slow down to a complete stop as the padding absorbed the sprinter's energy by deforming.

If a car crashes into a concrete wall at 30 miles per hour (50 km/h), the front bumper of the car stops immediately, but the passenger compartment stops more gradually as the front structure of the vehicle crumples. The belted occupant is held to the seat and gains the advantage of the cushion provided by the crumpling of the front of the vehicle and the stretching of the safety belt webbing. That belted occupant's body slows down from 50 km/h (30 mph) to zero over a distance of 90-120 cm (3-4 feet). That belted occupant also remains properly positioned so that, if the air bag deploys in a frontal collision, the occupant might never strike any rigid structures in the vehicle. The unbelted occupant receives no such benefit. The unbelted person is not attached to the vehicle and so that person continues to travel at the vehicle's pre-crash speed of 30 miles per hour (50 km/h) until striking a hard object at approximately 30 miles per hour (50 km/h) and stopping abruptly. Even in a frontal collision in which the air bag deploys, the unbelted front seat occupant remains at greater risk of serious injury or death than the properly restrained front seat occupant. (See "SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM" in the index)

M WARNING

SAFETY BELTS PROTECT

Accident statistics show that drivers and passengers properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a higher chance of surviving an accident. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries.

WEARING THE SAFETY BELT

All seats of your vehicle are equipped with a three-point safety belt system that is anchored at three locations. Both front seats and outboard rear seats' belts are stored and locked by a retractor mechanism. When set in its normal emergency locking mode, the three-point safety belt requires no length adjustment and allows freedom of movement when the vehicle moves at constant speeds.

(Continued)

WARNING

However in a sudden or strong stop, or during heavy acceleration or deceleration, the safety belt will lock automatically to restrain the body.

In order to gain the full benefit of a safety belt, you must wear it correctly and position yourself correctly within your seat. as follows:

- <u>Seatback upright</u> (not reclined, to keep you from "submarining" or slipping out from under the safety belt, and injuring vulnerable body parts in a crash.)
- Occupant sitting upright (not slouched, to properly position the lap and shoulder portions of the safety belt for maximum restraint and minimum injury to soft and vulnerable parts of your body in a crash)
- Safety belt latch plate and buckle securely fastened with a "click" (if the safety belt is not securely latched, it cannot provide any protection; pull on the belt to make sure it is secure)

(Continued)

M WARNING

- <u>Lap portion of safety belt snug and low on hips and pelvis</u> (not abdomen where the restraining belt could cause serious injury in a crash THIS IS PARTICULARLY IMPORTANT FOR PREGNANT WOMEN)
- Shoulder portion of the safety belts over your outside shoulder and snug against the chest (not under an arm, around your neck, over an inside shoulder or behind your back, and not loose with slack allowing excessive forward movement and injury in a crash)
- Only one occupant per one safety belt
 (do not allow more than one person
 in a safety belt; multiple people in a
 single safety belt can exceed the
 capacity of the safety belts and
 people sharing a safety belt can
 cause crushing and other injuries to
 each other in a crash)

(Continued)

WARNING

- <u>Children in secure child seats</u> (in a crash the forces are too great for an adult to hold onto a child and the adult will crush the child if they share the same safety belt)
- No unbelted occupants not wearing a safety belt are an injury threat to themselves and to other occupants in the vehicle because in a crash they become a freeflying body that will strike other persons in their path)
- No twisted safety belts (twisted safety belts will not move freely and restrain properly and can cut into the occupants rather than spread the force, thus increasing the risk of injury and death)
- Lock doors (unlocked doors increase the risk of injury and death from external impacts and ejection in a crash)

(Continued)

WARNING

- Make periodic checks (while riding in the vehicle, check from time to time to be sure that the lap portion of the belt is snugly across the hips and has not ridden up around the waist and that the shoulder portion is midway over the shoulder and across the chest; properly positioned belts allow the stronger structures of the hips and shoulders to absorb the forces of the belt against the body, while improperly positioned belts may cause neck injury or injury to the vulnerable organs in the abdominal area).
- No hard or breakable objects, between safety belts and body parts (objects such as ballpoint pens, glasses, etc. in the occupant's pocket or on the clothes can cause injury in the event of a collision)

WARNING

If the safety belt goes over an armrest (if so equipped), lap portion of the safety belt could force the occupant's abdomen, not the pelvis, in a collision.

 Be sure that the safety belt goes under the armrests.

Failure to follow this can result in injuries or even death in case of a collision.

FRONT SEAT OCCUPANTS

Each front seat is equipped with adjustable seat and seatback with height-adjustable head restraint, three point lap-and-shoulder safety belts, and a supplemental restraint system (air bag).

REAR SEAT OCCUPANTS

The rear seat is equipped with two outboard seating positions and a centre seating position featuring three-point lap-and-shoulder safety belts.

Each outboard seating positions are equipped with child restraint lower anchors and the top tether anchors located on the back of the rear seatback. (See "LOWER ANCHOR AND TOP TETHER ANCHOR FOR CHILD RESTRAINT" in the index for more information)

THIRD ROW SEAT OCCUPANTS

The third row seat is equipped with two seating positions featuring three-point lap-and-shoulder safety belts.

THREE-POINT SAFETY BELTS

To help reduce the risk of personal injury in collisions or sudden manoeuvres, your vehicle is equipped with three-point safety belts. The two front seats, the rear seats and the third row seats are each equipped with three-point safety belts. These safety belts are each anchored in three locations to restrain passengers who are properly positioned and wearing the safety belt.

A three-point safety belt set in the ELR (Emergency Locking Retractor) mode requires no length adjustment and allows the freedom of body movement when the vehicle moves at a constant speed.

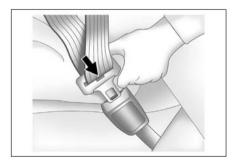
However, in the event of a sudden or strong stop, or during heavy acceleration or deceleration, the safety belt will lock automatically to restrain the body. Always fasten your safety belts correctly:

- 1. Close and lock the doors.
- 2. Make sure seatback is upright.
- 3. Pick up the safety belt latch plate and use it to pull the belt across your body. Make sure the belt is not twisted. If the safety belt locks as you are pulling it out, allow it to rewind into the retractor. Pull the safety belt out again to a comfortable and secure length.
- 4. Position the shoulder belt midway over the shoulder and across the chest. Never place the shoulder belt across the neck. This assures that in the case of a collision, the belt applies force to the shoulder bones and keeps the impact away from ribs or neck, helping to avoid serious internal injuries.



- not the waist. This assures that in the case of a collision, the belt applies force to the pelvic bones and not the abdomen, helping to avoid serious injuries.
- 6. Push the latch plate firmly into the buckle until the mechanism clicks. Make sure you are using the proper buckle. Be sure to position the release button on the buckle so you can unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.
- is secure.

5. Wear the lap belt low and snug on the hips, 7. Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it To remove the safety belt, press the release button on the buckle. The belt will retract automatically. Guide the safety belt as it retracts to prevent the latch plate from damaging interior surfaces or injuring occupants.







Maintain your safety belts:

- Periodically inspect all safety belts, related parts, and assemblies. Have these replaced by a workshop if any safety belts or assemblies or related parts are damaged. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.
- You must replace any safety belt or related part that has been stretched or damaged in an accident, even if the stretching or damage is not obvious or visible. Stretched belts and damaged parts do not perform effectively. Replacement of safety belts must be new.
- 3. We recommend replacing the entire safety belt assembly after your vehicle has been in a collision. If a trained specialist finds that no safety belt damage has occurred and that everything is in proper working order, you need not make any replacement. We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.
- 4. It is dangerous to operate your vehicle with damaged safety belts or other parts.

SAFETY BELT PRETENSIONER

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety belt pretensioner system at the front seating positions. You can use the pretensioner safety belts in the same manner as ordinary safety belts.

The safety belt pretensioner system is activated based on crash severity. The crash sensors and the electronic controller of the air bag system also control the safety belt pretensioners.

The pretensioner is located around retractor of each front safety belt. The pretensioner tightens the safety belt so the belt fits the occupant's body more snugly in the event of a frontal crash. The retractors will remain locked after the pretensioners are activated. Upon activation, some noise will occur and some smoke may be released. These conditions are not harmful and do not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

The driver and all passengers must be properly restrained by wearing safety belts at all times, whether or not a pretensioner is equipped at their seating position, to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Sit fully back in the seat; sit up straight; do not lean forward or sideways. Adjust the belt so the lap portion of the belt is worn low across the pelvis, not across the waist.

Please note that the pretensioners will activate in severe frontal collisions and side impacts. They are not designed to activate in rear impacts or minor frontal collisions. The pretensioners can be activated only once. If the pretensioners are activated, have the pretensioner system serviced by a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

If the air bag warning lamp on the instrument cluster does not blink or come on briefly when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, stays on for more than 10 seconds, or comes on while driving, the pretensioner system or the air bag system may not work properly. Have both systems inspected by a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

Service on or around the pretensioner system components or wiring must be performed only by a specially trained workshop. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer. Improper service could result in unintended activation of pretensioners or could render the pretensioner inoperative. Either of these two conditions may result in personal injury.

SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

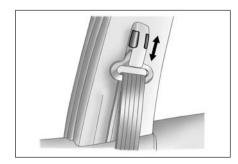
Before you begin to drive, move the safety belt height adjuster to the height that is right for you.

Adjust the height so that the shoulder portion of the belt is centred on your shoulder. The belt should be away from your face and neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Incorrect positioning of the shoulder belt can reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt.

WARNING

Incorrect adjustment of the safety belt height could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.

To move it up or down, squeeze the release buttons together and move the height adjuster to the desired position. You can move the height adjuster up just by raising it up without squeezing the buttons.



WARNING

Never drive with an improperly positioned safety belt. To help avoid injuries, always observe the following precautions:

- Adjust the safety belt height before driving.
- Wear the shoulder belt midway across the shoulder.
- Lock the safety belt anchor in position.

Failure to follow these precautions can result in injuries or even death in case of a collision.

PREGNANT WOMEN AND SAFETY BELTS

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women.

Like all occupants, pregnant women are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. In addition, when a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the unborn child will be safe in a crash.

To provide maximum protection, a pregnant woman should wear a three-point safety belt. She should wear the lap portion of the belt as low as possible throughout her pregnancy.

CHILD RESTRAINT

WARNING

Child safety restraints are available in a wide range of sizes and configurations. Due to the shape and dimensions of your vehicle's interior and seats, not all child safety restraints will fit in your vehicle.

It is your responsibility to ensure that the child safety restraint you are installing fits properly and can be adequately attached to the vehicle with the safety belts and the child safety restraint anchors.

A child safety restraint that is not the correct size for the vehicle or the child, or a child safety restraint that is improperly attached to your vehicle can lead to serious personal injury to the child and other passengers in the vehicle in the event of a collision.

Once you have selected an appropriate infant or child restraint, read and carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing and using the system. The child restraint system should be appropriate for your child's age, height and weight; and it should fit properly and securely in the vehicle. There are different kinds of restraint systems that are available for all sizes of children until they reach a height and weight at which they can safely use the vehicle's safety belt system.

Accident statistics show that children are safer in accidents when they are restrained in the rear seat rather than the front seat of the vehicle.

Children who have outgrown their child restraint system should sit in the rear seat, restrained by the safety belt that is fastened properly, making sure that the shoulder portion is adjusted to be as far away from the neck as possible and that the lap portion is low across the hips. Check the belt position from time to time to verify that it is safely positioned.

If the child must sit in a front seat, make certain that the shoulder belt does not lie across the child's face or neck. If it does, move the child closer to the centre of the vehicle so that the safety belt is on the child's shoulder.

Never let the child stand or kneel on the seat, or in the cargo areas, while your vehicle is moving.

When the child seat is not in use, secure the seat with the vehicle's safety belt or remove it from the vehicle.

WARNING

Your vehicle is designed to fit universal child restraint seat only to the each rear outboard seating positions.

 Do not install universal child restraint seat to the front passenger's seat and/or rear centre seating position.

WARNING

- Never hold a baby in your arms while riding in a vehicle. Be sure to secure infants and small children in restraints approved for their use.
- During a crash, a baby will become so heavy you can't hold it. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 12-lb (5.5 kg) baby will become a 240-lb (110 kg) force against your arms.
- Failing to secure infants and small children in restraints approved for their use can result in injury during a collision, or even death.
- According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in a front seat.
- Do not install any child restraint in the front passenger's seat if your vehicle is equipped with side air bag.
 See "SIDE AIR BAGS" in the index for more information.

(Continued)

WARNING

(Continued)

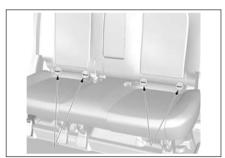
 Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it! Always secure a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat.

LOWER ANCHOR AND TOP TETHER ANCHOR FOR CHILD RESTRAINTS

In the past, child restraints have been attached to a vehicle's seat by safety belts. As a result, child restraints were often installed incorrectly or too loosely to adequately protect your child.

We now equip your vehicle with lower anchors and top tether anchors at the two rear outboard seating positions, allowing child restraints to be attached directly to the body of the vehicle.





To install a child restraint which comes equipped with lower and top tether anchor attachments, follow the instructions supplied with your child restraint and the "Installation of child restraints with lower and top tether anchor attachments" procedure on the following pages of this manual.

Please take the time to carefully read and follow all of the instructions on the following pages and the instructions supplied with your child restraint.

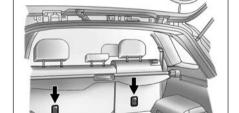
Your child's safety depends on it!

If you have questions, or any doubts whether you have installed your child restraint properly, contact the child restraint manufacturer. If you are still having trouble installing the child restraint in your vehicle, we recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

A CAUTION

Unused child restraint system could move forward.

Remove child restraint system if not in use, or secure it with safety belt.



NOTE

Since a safety belt or child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle, be sure and check the seat cover and buckles before placing a child there.

CHILD RESTRAINT INSTALLATION LOCATIONS

Permissible options for fitting a child restraint system

		Seating positions						
Weight class				On outboard seats		On the seats in		
		activated airbag	deactivated airbag	in the second row	the second row	the third row		
Group 0	up to 10 kg	X	U1	U+	X	Х		
Group 0+	up to 13 kg	X	U1	U+	X	X		
Group I	9 to 18 kg	X	U1	U+	X	X		
Group II	15 to 25 kg	X	X	U	X	X		
Group III	22 to 36 kg	X	X	U	X	X		

^{1 =} Only if front passenger seat airbag systems are deactivated. If the child restraint system is being secured using a three-point seat belt, adjust the seat backrest angle to the most forward position and ensure that vehicle safety belt runs forwards from the upper anchorage point.

^{+ =} Seat available with ISOFIX and Top-Tether mounting brackets.

U = Universal suitability in conjunction with three-point seat belt

X = No child restraint system permitted in this weight class

PERMISSIBLE OPTIONS FOR FITTING AN ISOFIX CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

				Seating positions				
Weight class		Size class	Fixture	On front passenger seat	On outboard seats in the second row	On centre seat in the second row	On the seats in the third row	
Group 0	up to 10 kg	Е	ISO/R1	Х	IL	X	X	
		Е	ISO/R1	X	IL	Х	X	
Group 0+	up to 13 kg	D	ISO/R2	Х	IL	X	X	
		С	ISO/R3	X	IL	X	X	
	9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X	X	
		С	ISO/R3	X	IL	X	X	
Group I		В	ISO/F2	X	IL, IUF	X	X	
		B1	ISO/F2X	X	IL, IUF	X	X	
		А	ISO/F3	X	IL, IUF	X	X	

IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX restraint systems of the 'specific-vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories.

The ISOFIX restraint system must be approved for the specific vehicle type.

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

X = No ISOFIX child restraint system approved in this weight class.

1-16 SEATS AND OCCUPANT PROTECTION SYSTEMS

ISOFIX size class and seat device

- A ISO/F3 = Forward-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.
- B ISO/F2 = Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.
- B1 ISO/F2X = Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.
- C ISO/R3 = Rear-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class up to 13 kg.
- D ISO/R2 = Rear-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class up to 13 kg.
- E ISO/R1 = Rear-facing child restraint system for young children in the weight class up to 13 kg.

WARNING

Use all lower and top tether anchors for their designed purpose only.

Lower and top tether anchors are designed only to hold child restraints which come equipped with lower and top anchor attachments.

 Do not use lower and top tether anchors to hold adult safety belts, harnesses, or other items of equipment in your vehicle.

Using lower and top tether anchors to hold adult safety belts, harnesses, or other items or equipment in your vehicle will not provide adequate protection in the case of a collision and could result in injuries or even death.

WARNING

Child restraint system placed in the front seat could cause serious injury or death.

Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a front passenger air bag.

A child in a rear-facing child restraint installed in the front seat can be seriously injured if the front passenger air bag inflates.

Secure a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat.

A front-facing child restraint should be secured in the rear seat whenever possible. If installed in the front passenger seat, adjust the seat as far back as it will go.

<u>Installation of child restraints with lower</u> and top tether anchor attachments

 Select one of the rear outboard seating positions for installation of the child restraint.



1-18 SEATS AND OCCUPANT PROTECTION SYSTEMS

- Locate the two lower anchor positions. The location of each lower anchor is identified with a circular marking on the lower edge of the rear seatback.
- Make sure there are no foreign objects around lower anchors, including safety belt buckles or safety belts. Foreign objects can interfere with the proper latching of the child restraint to the anchors.
- Place the child restraint on the seat over the two lower anchors and attach it to the anchors following the instructions supplied with the child restraint.
- 5. Adjust and tighten the child restraint according to the instructions supplied with the child restraint.
- 6. Attach the clip on the child restraint's tether strap to the top tether anchor, making sure to remove any twists in the tether strap.

If the position you are using has an adjustable head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the head restraint.

If the position you are using has an adjustable head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the head restraint and route the tether under the head restraint and in between the head restraint posts.

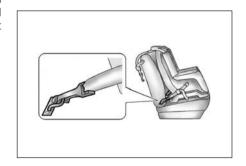


Make sure the clip on the child restraint's tether strap is properly attached to the top tether anchor.

Incorrect attachment could render the tether strap and top tether anchor ineffective.

- 7. Tighten the child restraint's tether strap according to the instructions supplied with the child restraint.
- 8. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions after installation to be sure it is secure.





HEAD RESTRAINTS

Head restraints are designed to reduce the risk of neck injuries in case of a collision.

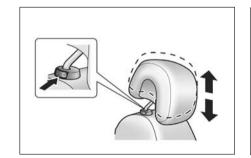
For maximum protection, slide the head restraint up or down so the top of the restraint is level with the top of your ears.

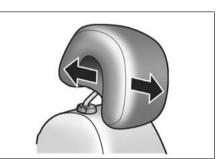
WARNING

Removed or improperly adjusted head restraints can result in serious head and neck injuries in case of a collision.

Pull up the head restraints in order to adjust the position upward. Push down the head restraints while pressing the release button in order to adjust the position downward. To tilt the front head restraints,

- 1. Place it in its upright position by pushing it forward fully and releasing it.
- 2. Push the head restraint forward carefully until it is adjusted to the desired position.





ACTIVE HEAD RESTRAINTS

In the event of a rear-end impact, the active head restraints at front seats automatically tilt forwards. The head is more effectively supported by the head restraint and the risk of injuries caused by hyperextension in the cervical vertebrae area is reduced.

FRONT SEATS

FRONT SEAT SLIDE ADJUSTMENT

To move the front seat forward or backward:

- 1. Pull up and hold the lever located under the front side of the front seat.
- 2. Slide the seat to the desired position.
- 3. Release the lever.

WARNING

• Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving.

Driver could lose control of the vehicle and injury or property damage could result.

FRONT SEAT RECLINING ADJUSTMENT

To tilt seatback forward or backward, lift the lever on the outside of the seat cushion until the seatback is adjusted to the desired position.

WARNING

• Do not adjust the driver's seatback while the vehicle is moving.

Driver could lose control of the vehicle and injury or property damage could result.





WARNING

If a crash occurs, front occupants in reclined seats can lose restraining benefits of the seatback and safety belts by sliding out from under the safety belt or by being thrown into the seat belt in an awkward position.

 Do not position either front seatback in the reclined position while the vehicle is being operated.

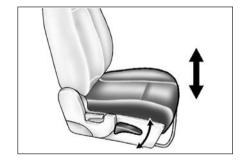
Serious injuries, death and ejection from the vehicle can result.

DRIVER'S SEAT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

To raise the driver's seat cushion, move the lever upward repeatedly until the seat is at the desired height. To lower the seat cushion, move the lever downward repeatedly until the seat is at the desired height.

DRIVER'S SEAT LUMBAR SUPPORT

To increase or decrease the driver's seat lumbar support, move the lever forward or rearward.





PASSENGER'S SEAT FOLDING

A CAUTION

If you fold the seatback forward to carry longer objects, such as skis, be sure any such cargo is not near an airbag. In a crash, an inflating airbag might force that object toward a person. This could cause severe injury or even death. Secure objects away from the area in which an airbag would inflate.

A CAUTION

Things you put on this seatback can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash. Remove or secure all items before driving.

following:

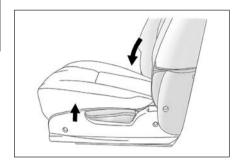
- 1. Lower the head restraint all the way.
- 2. Pull up and hold the lever under the front of the seat to slide the seat as far back as 2. Latch the seatback into place by pushing it will go and release the lever.
- 3. Lift the recliner lever, located on the outboard side of the seat, up fully and fold the seatback forward until it stops in the folded position.

To fold the passenger's seatback, do the To raise the passenger's seatback, do the following:

- 1. Lift the seatback and push to original position.
- on the top of the seatback.
- 3. Pull the seatback forward again to make sure the seatback is properly latched.

A CAUTION

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked.



ELECTRIC SEAT (DRIVER'S SEAT ONLY) SEAT SLIDE ADJUSTMENT

To move the seat forward or backward, move and hold the switch forward or backward. When the seat reaches the desired position, release the switch.

WARNING

• Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving.

Driver could lose control of the vehicle and injury or property damage could result.

SEAT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

To adjust the height of the front or rear part of the seat cushion, push the front or rear part of the switch up or down.

When the seatback reaches the desired position, release the switch.

WARNING

• Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving.

Driver could lose control of the vehicle and injury or property damage could result.

SEAT RECLINING ADJUSTMENT

To tilt seatback forward or backward, move and hold the upper part of the switch forward or backward.

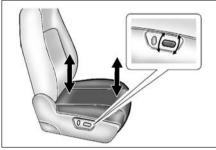
When the seatback reaches the desired position, release the switch.

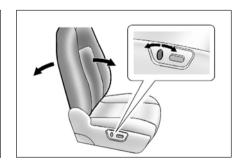
WARNING

• Do not adjust the driver's seatback while the vehicle is moving.

Driver could lose control of the vehicle and injury or property damage could result.







WARNING

If a crash occurs, front occupants in reclined seats can lose restraining benefits of the seatback and safety belts by sliding out from under the safety belt or by being thrown into the seat belt in an awkward position.

 Do not position either front seatback in the reclined position while the vehicle is being operated.

Serious injuries, death and ejection from the vehicle can result.

REAR SEATS FOLDING REAR SEATBACK

WARNING

- Do not stack luggage or other cargo higher than the front seats.
- Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion.
- Your vehicle has separate areas designed specifically for carrying cargo or passengers.
- Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seatback can be thrown about within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

Serious injuries or death can result.

A CAUTION

Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

To fold down the rear seatbacks separately:

- 1. Ensure all three of the safety belts are unbuckled and the front seatbacks are not reclined.
- 2. Push the head restraints fully down.
- 3. Lift the lever located on the top of the seatback to release the seatback.
- 4. Fold the rear seatback forward and down.

To return a rear seatback to its original 5. Pull the seatback forward again to make position:

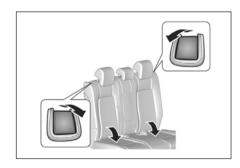
- 1. Hook the safety belts to the retaining guide to make sure the safety belts are not pinched.
- 2. Lift the rear seatback and push to original
- 3. Unhook the safety belts from the retaining
- 4. Latch the seatback into place by pushing on the top of the seatback.

sure the seatback is properly latched.

WARNING

- Ensure that the rear seatbacks are all the way back and locked in position before operating the vehicle with passengers in the back seat.
- Do not pull the release levers on the top of the seatback while the vehicle is moving.

Pulling the release levers while the vehicle is moving can cause injuries or damage to the occupants.





REAR SEAT RECLINING ADJUSTMENT

The rear seatbacks can be partially reclined.

To tilt the seatbacks, lift the lever on top of the rear seatback until the seatback is adjusted to the desired position.

DOUBLE FOLDING REAR SEAT (7 SEATER ONLY)

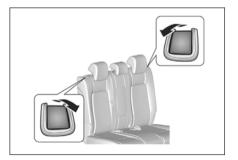
M WARNING

- Do not stack luggage or other cargo higher than the front seats.
- Do not allow passengers to sit on rear compartment when the rear seats are folded forward.
- Unrestrained luggage or passengers in rear compartment can be thrown about within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.
- Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.
- When double folding or unfolding, make sure the safety belt buckles are not pinched by the seat.

Serious injuries or death can result.

For third row seating entry or exit, do the following:

- Ensure all three of the safety belts are unbuckled and the front seatbacks are not reclined
- 2. Push the head restraints fully down.
- 3. Pull the lever forward on the outside of the seatback and fold the seatback.





4. The seat will tumble forward automatically and air-pressurised support rods will hold the seats folded.

To return the rear seat to its original position:

- Hook the safety belts to the retaining guide to make sure the safety belts are not pinched.
- 2. Guide the rear seat cushion down.
- Lock the rear seat cushion on the floor. Make sure that the rear seat cushion is securely latched by pulling it up and down.
- Return the rear seatback to its original position. Make sure that the seatback is securely latched by pulling it back and forth.
- 5. Unhook the safety belts from the retaining guide.

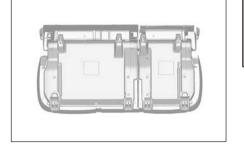
WARNING

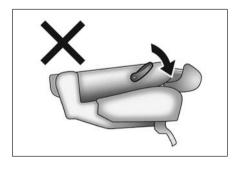
 Do not place the legs or other body parts on the floor under rear seat cushion when guiding the rear seat cushion down.

Serious injuries can result.

A CAUTION

Do not pull the lever when the seatback is folded. This operation can cause damage to the lever or related parts.





FOLDING THE THIRD ROW SEAT

To fold down the third row seatbacks:

- 1. Ensure the safety belts are unbuckled.
- 2. Lift the lever on the back of the each seatback.
- 3. Push the seatback forward and fold the seatback.

To return the rear seat to its original position:

- Raise the seatback to its original position.
 Make sure that the seatback is securely latched by pulling it back and forth.
- 2. Push the head restraint backward to its original position.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (AIR BAG)

Your vehicle is equipped with an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) designed to protect properly seated and restrained seat occupants. Both the driver and front passenger seating positions are equipped with driver and passenger air bags and side air bags, in addition to three-point safety belts and other safety features. Your vehicle has also curtain air bags. Curtain air bags are available for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver and for the right front passenger and the passenger seated directly behind that passenger.

Each air bag is specially packed in a module, from which the air bag is designed to inflate and deploy at extremely high speed and force in the event your vehicle is involved in certain types of collisions which pose a high risk of serious injury or death to the driver and passengers.



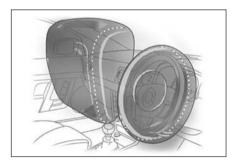
DRIVER'S AND FRONT PASSENGER'S AIR BAG

Driver's air bag

The driver's air bag is located in the centre of the steering wheel.

Front passenger's air bag

The passenger's air bag is located in the instrument panel.



WARNING

Air bags are only a supplemental restraint, and are most effective in combination with safety belts.

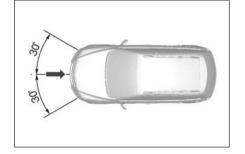
All occupants, including the driver, should always wear their safety belts, whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position, to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash.

- Frontal air bags do not deploy in side or rear collisions. Occupants not wearing their safety belts will not be protected by any restraint system, resulting in severe injuries or death in these types of collisions.
- Occupants who are not properly wearing their safety belts may be thrown forward by braking before impact, placing their bodies near or against the air bag modules. This can cause severe injury from the force of an air bag's deployment.

How air bags work

Air bags are designed to keep your head, neck, and chest from slamming into the instrument panel, steering wheel or windscreen in a front-end crash. They are not designed to inflate in rearend or rollover crashes or in most side-impact crashes. Your air bags are designed to deploy in crashes that are equivalent to, or exceed the force of a vehicle travelling at a speed of 15 to 23 km/h (9.3 ~ 14.3 mph) crashing into a solid immovable wall.

The air bag system activates during a severe collision which is either frontal or when the impact angle is up to 30° from straight ahead.



This crash severity level at which the air bag will deploy was selected to assure inflation of air bags in our vehicles at or below the crash severity at which a statistical risk of death begins for frontal collisions.

In the real world, cars rarely crash squarely into immovable walls; air bags most often deploy when a vehicle collides with another vehicle. The actual speed at which the air bags will inflate may be higher in the real world, because real-world accidents usually involve more complicated multi-vehicle impacts, angled impacts, and incomplete frontal impacts (e.g. sideswipes), and because the object struck is usually not immovable.

NOTE

An air bag can also inflate in moderate to severe non-collision situations (e.g., slamming the undercarriage or other solid component of the vehicle in a dip in the driving surface) where the crash sensors generate a signal equivalent to a crash into a solid immovable barrier at 15 to 23 km/h (9.3 ~ 14.3 mph).

Air bags inflate when a sensor detects a frontend crash of a severity sufficient for air bag deployment. The crash sensor sends an electric signal to initiate the air bag's inflation. A propellant is ignited which rapidly burns inside the air bag module, producing enough inert gas to fully inflate the air bag. Within 0.045 seconds of the crash detection, the pressure of the inflating air bag splits open the plastic trim covering on the module, which is scored on the inside surface to allow the trim of the steering wheel hub or passenger-side instrument panel to split open under force.

The air bag fully inflates to create a surface that can catch the forward movement of the front occupant's head and upper torso. As the occupant comes into contact with the air bag, the gas in the bag empties through holes at the base of the bag to soak up the force from the occupant's forward movement.

NOTE

Air bags cannot smother you and they don't restrict your movement. Air bags have vents, so they deflate immediately after cushioning you.

The entire process, from initial contact through the air bag's inflation and deflation, occurs within 0.2 seconds, faster than the blink of an eye. Because the collision is over in a fraction of a second, and vehicles involved in an accident usually come to the final point of rest only one or two seconds after initial contact, the supplemental restraint system must sense the crash and cause the air bags to deploy nearly instantaneously to protect the vehicle's occupants.

SIDE AIR BAGS

The side air bag modules are located in the outboard side of the front seatbacks.

WARNING

Air bags are only a supplemental restraint, and are most effective in combination with safety belts.

All occupants, including the driver, should always wear their safety belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position, to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash.

(Continued)



WARNING

(Continued)

- Do not place objects on or near the side air bag modules in the outboard side of each front seats. They can become projectiles during inflation, causing severe injury.
- Do not install accessory seat covers on the front seats. The deployment of the side air bags can be obstructed in a collision leading to serious injury.
- Do not lean your body part or head on the door. The side air bag can hit the occupants with a considerable force when it deploys in a collision leading to serious injury.
- Do not install any child restraint in the front passenger's seat if your vehicle is equipped with the side air bag.

Failure to follow these precautions can result in serious injury or even death.

How the side air bags work

Side air bags are designed to keep your thorax from slamming into the front door and window in a lateral crash.

The side air bags inflate when a sensor detects a lateral crash of a severity sufficient for the side air bag deployment.

Your side air bags are designed to deploy in lateral collisions that are equivalent to, or exceed the force of a deformable moving barrier travelling at a speed of 15 to 25 km/h (9.3 ~ 15.5 mph) crashing into a vehicle.

The fact that your vehicle was involved in a crash and the side air bags did not inflate does not necessarily mean that there is something wrong with your side air bags. Side air bags are designed to inflate in a side collision, not in front-end, rear-end, or rollover crashes if they don't produce sufficient lateral impact for the deployment of the side air bags.

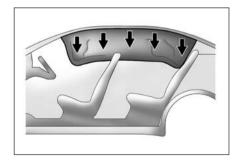
M WARNING

Children who are seated in close proximity to a side air bag may be at risk of serious or fatal injury if the air bag deploys, especially if the child's head, neck, or chest is close to the air bag at the time of deployment.

- Never let your child lean on the door or close to the side air bag module.
- The safest place in the vehicle for your properly seated and restrained child is the back seat.

CURTAIN AIR BAGS

The curtain air bags are located in the ceiling above the side windows. They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.



The curtain air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and impact. They are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations, collisions from the front or rear of the vehicle or in most rollover situations.

The curtain air bag system will be triggered together with the side air bag system.

WARNING

Curtain air bags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe crashes where something hits the side of your vehicle. They are not designed to inflate in frontal, in rollover or in rear crashes. Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly – whether or not there is an air bag for that person.

WARNING

Never secure anything to the roof of your vehicle by routing the rope or tiedown through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating curtain air bag will be blocked. The path of an inflating air bag must be kept clear.

AFTER THE AIR BAG DEPLOYS

After the air bag deflates, you may notice a burning smell, smoke, and white powder in the interior of the vehicle. This is normal. The burning smell is from the propellant that was ignited to inflate the airbag. The white powder is cornstarch or talcum or sodium compounds which lubricate the air bag to reduce friction on the air bag during storage and inflation. Although they may cause some skin or eye irritation, these substances are not toxic.

NOTE

Your vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors and turn the hazard warning flashers on when the airbags inflate.

SRS SERVICING

Your Supplemental Restraint System(SRS) is virtually maintenance free.

However, if any of the following occurs, have your SRS serviced immediately by a workshop. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

- · Any of your air bags have deployed.
- The air bag warning lamp indicates malfunction. See "AIR BAG WARNING LAMP" in the index.

NOTE

If your vehicle is equipped with side air bags, the front seat assembly must be replaced after the side air bag has been deployed. Consult a workshop for more information. We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

WARNING

- Do not drive your vehicle after one or more air bags have deployed.
- Do not try to repair, alter, or dispose of the air bag yourself.
- Air bags are installed under high pressure with sophisticated crash sensing and air bag inflating systems. Allowing an untrained and unauthorised person to handle an air bag can lead to serious injuries and death.
- Contact a workshop immediately if either of your vehicle's air bag has deployed, if damage occurs to your vehicle at or near either of the air bag modules, or if you believe for any reason that the operating condition of either air bag has been impaired. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

Driving a vehicle after an air bag has deployed without authorised service can result in severe injuries and death.

HOW AIR BAGS PROTECT FRONT OCCUPANTS

Vehicle occupants are usually injured in a collision because their bodies are thrown into a stationary object, either inside the vehicle, such as the steering wheel, instrument panel or windscreen, or outside the vehicle, such as the driving surface or a tree, when the occupant is thrown from the vehicle. Severe injuries also occur by occupants being jolted by the forces of the crash, even without body contact with a stationary object or surface.



All of these injuries are caused by the force created by the collision as the vehicle is brought to a sudden stop. The time and distance which a vehicle is allowed in slowing or stopping in great part determines the severity of a collision's effect on vehicle occupants. For example, when a vehicle brakes to a stop at a red light, the occupant's bodies are forced forward. This is because both the vehicle and its occupants are initially travelling at the same speed. The brakes slow the vehicle, and the occupants continue to move forward somewhat inside the vehicle. However, properly positioned and restrained occupants are rarely injured when a vehicle comes to a stop by even sudden and hard braking. This is because even hard braking allows a comparatively long time and distance for the vehicle to stop. The safety belts and the occupants' strength are generally sufficient to safely counteract the force of a braking stop.

In a crash, a vehicle may go from highway speed to a full stop in a fraction of a second and in a distance of less than one foot. This extremely short stopping time and distance greatly increases the force placed upon the occupants. No person has the strength or reflexes to counteract this force. Even occupants properly positioned and wearing their safety belts will find their head, upper torso, arms, and hips thrown forward at the speed the vehicle was travelling before impact. In moderate to severe frontal collisions, even occupants wearing safety belts can sustain internal brain and organ injuries without the occupant's head or torso hitting any stationary objects or surfaces.

Air bags provide additional stopping time and distance for the head and upper torsos of front occupants in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal collisions. This additional time and distance can save lives and prevent serious injuries.

HELP YOUR AIR BAGS TO PROTECT YOU!

Besides their lifesaving benefits, the air bag system also poses some moderate risks.

Because an air bag inflates with considerable force, speed and suddenness, the air bag supplemental restraint system will be safer and more effective if the occupants are properly positioned in the vehicle.

WARNING

Essential Air Bag Safety Rules:

- Never place a rear-facing child seat in the front seat.
- Children age 12 years and under should ride in the back seat whenever possible.
- Always wear your safety belts, even if your vehicle is equipped with an air bag.
- Move your seatback rearward as far as is comfortable and safe, tilt the seatback slightly and sit against the back of the seat.
- Do not place objects on, over or near the air bag modules. They can become projectiles during inflation, causing severe injury.
- Do not lean forward or rest any part of your body on the trim covering the air bag modules.
- Do not drive with the steering column tilt adjusted fully upward.

Severe injury and death can result from failing to observe these air bag safety rules.

Always secure any rear-facing child seat in the back seat.

Child restraint systems in which the child faces the rear of the seat must never be placed in the front seat. The deployment of an air bag risks severe injury or death to a child in a rear-facing child seat placed in the front seat.

Children belong in the back seat.

According to accident statistics, children age 12 years and under are safer when properly restrained in the back seat than in the front seat, and should ride in the back seat whenever possible. Children are not safer in the back seat only because of the risks of injury by air bags. Studies have shown that children are also safer in the back seat than in a front seat without an air bag.

<u>Proper positioning of adults and teenagers.</u>

Adults and teenagers seated in the front driver and passenger seats can also improve their safety and the effectiveness of the air bags by using proper seating positions.

For the best seating position of adults and teenagers:

 Wear the three-point safety belts at all times.

All occupants, including the driver, should always wear their safety belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash.

Air bags do not deploy in rear and sideimpact collisions. Occupants not wearing their safety belts will not be protected by any restraint system, resulting in severe injuries or death in these types of collisions. Occupants who are not properly wearing their safety belts may be thrown forward by braking before impact, placing their bodies near or against the air bag modules. This can cause severe injury from the force of air bag's deployment.

 Move the back of the seat rearward as far back as is comfortable and safe.

Positioning your seat farther away from the air bag module will not decrease the effectiveness of the air bag. Greater distance from the module means greater protection from the air bag's forceful and sudden deployment. Never move the driver's seatback so far as to impair the driver's ability to comfortably reach the steering wheel, pedals and other instrument and controls.

Tilt the seatback slightly and do not lean forward.

Tilt the seatback slightly, and sit with your back against the back of the seat. Do not lean or otherwise position your body close - within 15 cm(6 inch) - to the air bag module. Do not rest any part of your body on or near the plastic trim covering the air bag module (the hub of the steering wheel or the passenger side of the instrument panel above the glove box). Try to keep your head and body more than 25 to 30 cm (10 to 12 inches) away from the air bag. More distance is safer.

WARNING

To perform well, an air bag must deploy quickly. The force is greatest in the first 5-8 cm (2-3 inches) after the air bag bursts through its cover and begins to inflate. Those 2 to 3 inches immediately after the air bag bursts through its module cover and begins to inflate are the risk zone.

- If an occupant's body is in this risk zone when the air bag deploys, severe injury or even death could result.
- The force decreases as the air bag inflates farther from the module cover.
- Greater distance from the air bag module means greater safety when the air bag deploys.

 Do not place objects, children or pets between you and the air bag module.

Your vehicle's air bag modules are located on the steering wheel and on the instrument panel above the glove box. Placing objects on, over or near the plastic trim covering these air bag modules could cause those objects to be propelled by the inflating air bag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

Children and pets should never ride on another occupant's lap. Do not place objects which could cause injury during deployment on an occupant's lap.

 Tilt the steering wheel downward (if so equipped), pointing the air bag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

Never position the steering wheel at the highest position. This position should only be used to allow easy entry and exit from the driver's seat. Lower the steering before starting to drive. This will aim the air bag at the driver's chest, rather than the more easily injured head and neck.

NOTE

The fact that your vehicle may be severely damaged and the air bags did not inflate or the fact that the vehicle is relatively undamaged and the air bag did inflate does not necessarily mean that there is something wrong with your air bag system. The crash sensors detect the severity of the crash, not the amount of damage to the vehicle.

AIR BAG ON-OFF SWITCH

If the instrument panel has the switch pictured in the following illustration, the vehicle has an air bag on-off switch that is used to manually turn on or off the front passenger frontal and side air bags, and the curtain air bag for the front passenger and the passenger sitting directly behind the front passenger.



This switch should only be turned to the off position if the person in the front passenger position falls under the conditions specified in this manual as follows:

Infant. An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because of any of the following:

- My vehicle has no rear seat.
- My vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat.
- The infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

Child age 1 to 12. A child aged 1 to 12 must ride in the front seat because of any of the following:

- My vehicle has no rear seat.
- Although children aged 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children aged 1 to 12 sometimes must ride in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of my vehicle.
- The child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

Medical Condition. A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician does both of the following:

- Causes the passenger airbags to pose a special risk for the passenger.
- Makes the potential harm from the passenger airbags in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning off the airbags and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.

M WARNING

If the front passenger air bags are turned off for a person who does not fall under the conditions specified in this manual, that person will not have the extra protection of the air bags. In a crash, the air bags will not be able to inflate and help protect the person sitting there. In addition, the curtain air bag will not be able to protect the person sitting directly behind the front passenger. Do not turn off the air bags unless the person sitting in the front passenger seat falls under the conditions specified in this manual.

The air bag on-off switch is on the instrument panel end cap, on the passenger side of the vehicle. To turn off the front passenger frontal and side air bags, and the curtain air bag for the front passenger and the passenger sitting directly behind the front passenger, insert any key or a coin into the switch, push in, and move the switch to the off position.

Vehicles equipped with an air bag on-off switch also have a passenger air bag status indicator. This indicator is above the glove box, in the instrument panel. When the air bags are turned off, the passenger air bag off light, in the passenger air bag status indicator comes on to let you know the air bags for the front passenger and passenger seated directly behind the front passenger are off. These air bags remain off until you turn them back on again.



WARNING

If the air bag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the air bag system. For example, the front passenger frontal and side air bags, and the curtain air bag for the front passenger and the passenger sitting directly behind the front passenger could inflate even though the air bag on-off switch is turned off.

To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away.

To turn the air bags on again, insert any key or a coin into the switch, push in, and move the switch to the on position.

The front passenger frontal and side air bags, and the curtain air bag for the front passenger and passenger sitting directly behind the front passenger are now enabled, and may inflate.

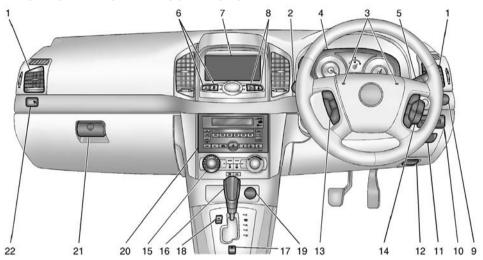
2 INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

(Continued)

• Q	UICK VIEW - INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS 2-3	•	CRUISE CONTROL	2-45
• II	NSTRUMENT CLUSTER 2-4	•	KEYS	2-47
• s	PEEDOMETER2-5	•	KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM	2-48
• T	ACHOMETER2-5	•	DOOR LOCKS	2-53
• F	UEL GAUGE 2-6	•	ELECTRIC WINDOWS	. 2-57
• т	EMPERATURE GAUGE 2-6	•	TAILGATE	2-59
• II	NDICATORS AND WARNING LAMPS2-7	•	BONNET	2-61
• 0	RIVER INFORMATION CENTRE2-27	•	INTERIOR COURTESY LAMPS	2-62
• 5	WITCHES AND CONTROLS2-32	•	FRONT DOOR STEP LAMP	2-63
		•	SUNGLASS HOLDER	2-63
V	VARNING LAMP 2-45		(Contin	med)

ELECTRIC SUNROOF 2-64	• COIN STORAGE2-71
• DIGITAL CLOCK2-65	LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER2-71
CIGAR LIGHTER AND ACCESSORY	• FRONT PASSENGER SEAT UNDERTRAY2-71
POWER OUTLET2-65	LUGGAGE FLOOR NET 2-72
PORTABLE ASHTRAY2-67	LUGGAGE HOLDING NET 2-72
SEAT HEATER SWITCH 2-68	UNDER FLOOR STORAGE 2-72
• HORN 2-68	LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT STORAGE 2-73
• CUP HOLDER 2-69	• SUN VISORS 2-73
• GLOVE BOX 2-69	ASSIST GRIP WITH COAT HOOK 2-73
• CONSOLE BOX2-70	• ROOF RACK2-74
• CARD HOLDER2-70	• ANTENNA 2-75

QUICK VIEW - INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

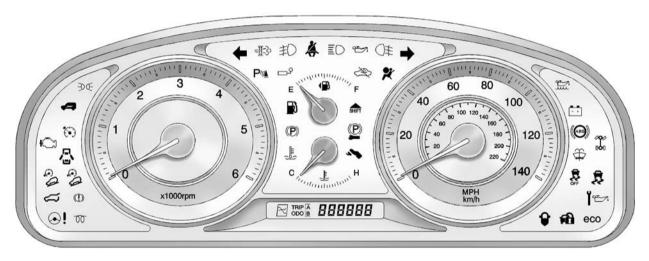


- 1. Air Vents
- 2. Turn and Lane/ Exterior Lamp Controls
- 3. Horn
- 4. Instrument Cluster
- 5. Windshield Wiper/Washer
- 6. Hazard Warning Flashers/ ESC OFF Switch
- 7. Centre deposit box

- 8. DCS Switch/ Front Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Lamp
- 9. Combination Switch
- 10. Card Holder
- 11. Coin Storage
- 12. Hood Release Lever
- 13. Steering Wheel Audio Controls
- 14. Cruise Control/ Climate Control Buttons

- 15. Climate Control Systems
- 16. Shift Lever
- 17. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Switch
- 18. ECO Switch
- 19. Cigarette Lighter
- 20. Audio System
- 21. Glove Box
- 22. Passenger Airbag OFF Indicator

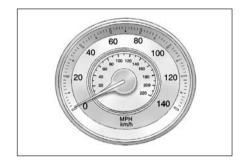
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

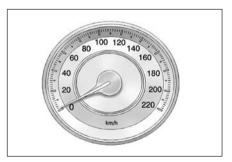


* The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration. For more details refer to the next pages.

SPEEDOMETER

The speedometer shows vehicle speed in kilometres per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).





ODOMETER / TRIP ODOMETER

The odometer shows how far your car has been driven in kilometres.



C0E2005A

There are two independent trip odometers, which measure the distances your vehicle has travelled since you last reset this function.

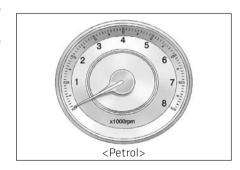
To reset each trip meter to zero, press and hold the trip odometer button until it resets. The trip odometer button is located in the lower right area of the speedometer.

The odometer, trip A and trip B can be swtiched by pressing the trip odometer button.

TACHOMETER

The tachometer indicates engine speed in revolutions per minute(rpm).

Never operate the engine at such high rpm that the tachometer needle is in the red zone.



WARNING

Excessive engine speed can damage the engine.

 Do not let the engine reach excessive engine speed, as indicated by the needle being in the red zone.

This could result in costly repairs.

FUEL GAUGE

Indicates how much fuel remains in the fuel tank when the ignition switch is ON.

After adding fuel and restarting the engine, the fuel gauge needle slowly moves to show the new fuel level.

Movement of the fuel within the fuel tank causes the fuel gauge needle to move when you brake, accelerate or turn.

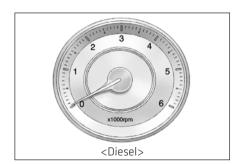
TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates engine coolant temperature when the ignition switch is ON.

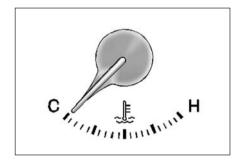
A CAUTION

 Do not continue to drive your vehicle if the temperature gauge needle is in the red area of the gauge. This means your vehicle's engine is overheating.

Driving with an overheated engine can damage your vehicle. See "OVER HEAT-ING" in the index.







INDICATORS AND WARNING LAMPS

LOW FUEL LEVEL WARNING LAMP

Illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds.

This warning lamp also comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel.

A CAUTION

• Do not let your vehicle run out of fuel. This can damage the catalytic converter. Fill up the fuel tank as soon as possible when warning lamp comes on.

See "FUEL" in the index.

FUEL ECONOMY LAMP

For vehicles with the fuel economy mode lamp, it comes on when the eco (economy) switch, located on the center console near the shifter, is pressed. Press the switch again to turn off the lamp and exit the fuel saver mode.

For vehicles with petrol engine, when you move selector lever to manual mode, the lamp will turn off.



eco

ABS WARNING LAMP

The ABS warning lamp comes on briefly as you turn the ignition ON. This means that the system performs self-checking. The lamp should go out after about a few seconds.

Contact a workshop for repairs if the ABS warning lamp does either of the following:

- Does not come on when the ignition is turned ON.
- · Does not go out.
- Comes on while driving

We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.



M WARNING

 The ABS warning lamp may mean your brakes are not working properly.
 Failure to keep your vehicle's brakes in proper working condition can cause a collision resulting in personal injuries and damage to your vehicle or other property.

If the ABS warning lamp comes on while driving, your vehicle may have an ABS malfunction. Although your vehicle's brake system will operate normally without ABS but in the event of heavy braking the wheels may lock, have a workshop check the system and make any necessary repairs as soon as possible. We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

See "ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM" in the index.

AIR BAG WARNING LAMP

The air bag warning lamp flashes several times when you turn the ignition ON. This means that your air bag system is functional.



WARNING

If the air bag warning lamp flashes or stays on while driving, this indicates a malfunction with the air bag system. The airbag system will then be switched off and in the event of an accident may not trigger. Have the system checked at a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

Driving without a properly functioning air bag system may lead to personal injury, or even death, in the event of an accident.

An air bag system malfunction can be indicated by any of these warning lamp displays:

- Does not flash or stay on when the ignition is switched on.
- · Flashes while driving.
- Stays on continuously while driving.

For a description of the air bag system and other occupant protection systems, see section 1.

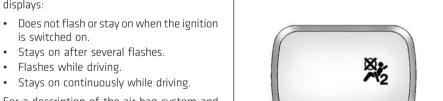
AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR

The indicator is located above the glove box. Illuminates when the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING LAMP

The brake system warning lamp illuminates when you turn the ignition ON, before the engine is started.

This means that the indicator is operating properly. The lamp should go out after you start the engine.





A CAUTION

- Do not drive with the brake system warning lamp on.
- This may mean your brakes are not working properly.
- Driving with malfunctioning brakes can lead to a collision resulting in personal injuries and damage to your vehicle and other property.

When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low, the brake system warning lamp comes on

If so, follow these steps:

- 1. Carefully pull off the road and come to a stop.
- 2. Check the brake fluid level.
- Add the recommended brake fluid up to the MAX mark. See "ADDING BRAKE/ CLUTCH FLUID" in the index.

- 4. Drive carefully at a safe speed to a workshop to have the brakes inspected if the following conditions exist:
 - You judge your vehicle's brake system to be safe.

We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

- Have your vehicle towed to a workshop for inspection and repair if the following conditions exist:
 - You find leaks in the brake system.
 - The brake system warning lamp stays on.

We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE LAMP

For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the parking brake status lamp comes on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your authorised repairer.

The parking brake status lamp comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the lamp continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system.

If the lamp does not come on, or remains flashing, consult your authorised repairer.



For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the parking brake warning lamp should come on briefly when the vehicle is in ON/START. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this lamp comes on, there is a problem with a system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a dealer as soon as possible. See "PARKING BRAKE" in the index.

For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), this indicator comes on when the EPB switch is released without pressing the brake pedal. Always press the brake pedal before pressing the EPB switch to release the Electric Parking Brake.

CHARGING SYSTEM WARNING LAMP

Indicates the battery is being discharged. The lamp should come on when you turn the ignition ON. The lamp should go out when you start the engine.

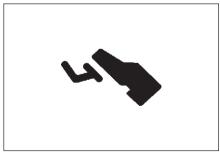
A CAUTION

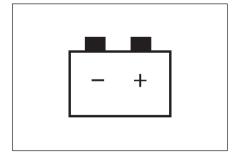
The charging system warning lamp indicates there may be a problem with your charging system.

• Do not drive your vehicle when the charging system warning lamp is on.

Driving your vehicle while its charging system is malfunctioning can cause damage to the vehicle.







If the charging system warning lamp comes on while you are driving:

- 1. Pull safely off the road.
- 2. Stop your vehicle.
- 3. Make sure the drive belt is not loose or broken. See "DRIVE BELT" in the index.

A CAUTION

A loose or broken drive belt can cause the engine to overheat.

• Do not drive your vehicle if the drive belt is loose or broken.

An overheated engine can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs.

 If the drive belt is in proper working order but the charging system warning lamp stays on, there may be a problem somewhere in the charging system.

Take your vehicle to a workshop for repairs as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

ENGINE OIL PRESSURE WARNING LAMP

Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on before the engine starts.

The lamp should go out after the engine starts.

If the engine oil pressure warning lamp comes on while driving, your engine oil pressure may be dangerously low. Stop the engine immediately and check the oil level.

See "ENGINE OIL" in the index for the correct checking procedure.

A CAUTION

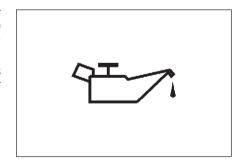
Your engine oil pressure may be dangerously low.

• Do not drive with the engine oil pressure warning lamp on.

Driving your vehicle with low oil pressure can result in costly damage to your vehicle.

If the oil level is low, add the specified engine oil to the correct level. See "CHANGING ENGINE OIL AND FILTER" in the index.

If the oil level is normal, have a workshop check your vehicle's lubricating system. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.



MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP

Illuminates briefly as you turn the ignition ON, before you start the engine.

The lamp should go out after the engine is started.

A CAUTION

The indicator lamp signals that your vehicle has a problem that requires attention. Driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on can damage the emissions control system and can affect the fuel economy and driveability of your vehicle.

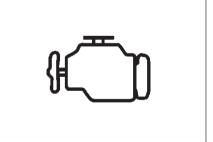
Consult a workshop to repair the problem as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate if a fault exists in the emission related components or related sub systems.

It will stay on as long as the Engine Control Module (ECM) detects the fault. If a severe misfire level is detected, the MIL will blink continuously. Severe misfire can cause catalytic converter damage.

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will also illuminate to indicate that there is a malfunction in the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF). If this happens, you should consult a workshop to repair the problem immediately. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer. See "DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)" in the index for more information.

Your vehicle's electronic system will switch to an emergency running programme so you may continue to drive. However, you should consult a workshop to repair the problem as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.



2-14 INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

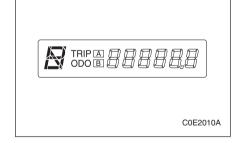
If the MIL comes on briefly and then goes out again, this is normal and does not indicate a system fault.

SELECTOR LEVER POSITION INDICATOR (AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE)

Shows the position of the transaxle gear See "FRONT FOG LAMP" in the index. selector lever.

FRONT FOG LAMP INDICATOR

Illuminates when the front fog lamps are on.
See "FRONT FOG LAMP" in the index.





REAR FOG LAMP INDICATOR

Illuminates when the rear fog lamps are on.
See "REAR FOG LAMP" in the index.

DRIVER'S SAFETY BELT REMINDER

Driver's safety belt warning lamp comes on for about a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned ON, and then goes out. This means that the system performs self-checking. After the engine is started, unless the driver's safety belt is securely fastened, the lamp will flash for about 90 seconds and then illuminate until the driver's safety belt is fastened.

After that, if the vehicle speed goes over about 22km/h, the lamp will flash again along with the warning chime for about 90 seconds and then illuminate until the driver's safety belt is fastened.

NOTE

If you fasten the driver's safety belt when the warming lamp comes on or flashes after the system performs selfchecking, the safety belt warning lamp will go out immediately.

If you want to stop the warning chime instead of fastening the safety belt, do the followings: When the ignition is ON, insert the latch plate into safety belt buckle and then extract it. This opeartion should be performed two times within 10 seconds.

The warning chime will be able to sound again a few minutes after the ignition is OFF.





TURN SIGNAL / HAZARD WARNING FLASHER INDICATORS

Turn signal / hazard warning flasher indicators verify that the exterior turn signals or hazard warning flashers are working properly.

If the green arrows don't flash when you signal a turn or push the hazard warning button, check the fuse and replace any that are not operating properly.

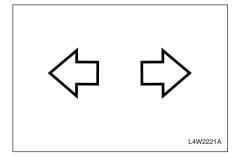
A CAUTION

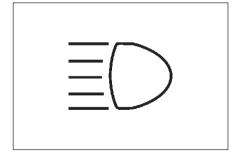
These indicators are required for safe driving.

Failure to keep these indicators in proper working condition can lead to accidents that can result in personal injuries or damage to your vehicle or other property.

HIGH BEAM INDICATOR

The high-beam indicator illuminates when the headlamp high-beams are on.





ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC) OFF INDICATOR

Illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds.

The ESC off indicator illuminates to indicate that you have cancelled the system by pressing ESC OFF located on the centre of the instrument panel.

See "ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL SYSTEM" in the index for more information.

ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC) ACTIVE AND WARNING LAMP

Illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds.

This lamp blinks while ESC is operating and illuminates to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system.

See "ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL SYSTEM" in the index for more information.

DESCENT CONTROL SYSTEM (DCS) ACTIVE AND NOT READY/WARNING LAMP

The green DCS lamp is DCS active indicator and the amber DCS lamp is DCS not ready & warning lamp.

DCS active indicator illuminates(as green colour) when DCS is ready for use and blinks(as green colour) while DCS is operating by pressing the DCS button located on the centre of the instrument panel.







DCS not ready & warning lamp works as the following:

- Blinks (as amber colour) to indicate that DCS is not ready for condition to operate due to the high temperature (about 350~400°C) of friction material(front pad) through severe or repeated braking. This lamp will disappear when the temperature of friction material(front pad) is lower than 350°C.
- Illuminates (as amber colour) to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system due to the high temperature(over 400°C) of friction material(front pad) through severe or repeated braking. This lamp also will disappear when temperature of friction material(front pad) is lower than 350°C.

The blinking and illuminating of DCS not ready & warning lamp notify you that the friction material needs to cool down(drive your vehicle enough without braking as much as possible). Above temperature may differ somewhat according to vehicle condition or environment(season or outer temperature) or etr

See "DESCENT CONTROL SYSTEM" in the index for more information.

IMMOBILISER SYSTEM WARNING LAMP

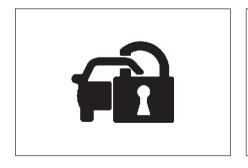
Illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds.

This lamp comes on to indicate that there is a malfunction in the immobiliser system.

See "IMMOBILISER SYSTEM" in the index.

A CAUTION

If the immobiliser system warning lamp comes on, you should consult a workshop to repair the problem as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.



PARKING ASSISTANCE SYSTEM WARNING LAMP

Illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds.

This lamp illuminates to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system.

See "PARKING ASSISTANCE SYSTEM" in the index for more information.

A CAUTION

If the parking assistance system warning lamp comes on, you should consult a workshop to repair the problem as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.



LOW WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID LEVEL WARNING LAMP

Illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds.

This lamp comes on when the washer fluid level is low. Add washer fluid when you see this lamp come on.

See "WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID" in the index

SERVICE VEHICLE SOON LAMP

Illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds.

A CAUTION

The service vehicle soon lamp signals that your vehicle has a problem that requires attention. Driving with the lamp on can damage the non-emission related system.

Consult a workshop to repair the problem as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

The service vehicle soon lamp will illuminate if a fault exists in the non-emission related components or related sub systems.

It will stay on as long as the Electronic Control Unit (ECU) detects the fault.





ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE WARNING LAMP

Illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds.

This lamp tells you that the engine coolant has overheated.

If you have been operating your vehicle under normal driving conditions, you should pull off the road, stop your vehicle and let the engine idle for a few minutes.

If the lamp does not go out, you should switch the engine off and consult a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised . Chevrolet repairer.

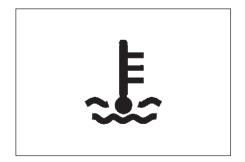
See "OVERHEATING" in the index.

DOOR OPEN WARNING LAMP

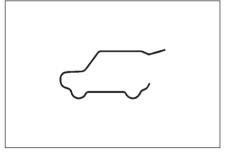
Illuminates when a door is open or not Illuminates when the tailgate or tailgate securely latched.

TAILGATE OPEN WARNING LAMP

window is open or not securely latched.







CRUISE CONTROL INDICATOR

Illuminates when cruise control is set. It will go out when cruise control is turned off.

See "CRUISE CONTROL" in the index.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE (AWD) SYSTEM WARNING LAMP (AWD only)

Illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds.

This lamp blinks when AWD system is temporarily disabled and illuminates to indicate that there is a malfunction in the AWD system.

If AWD system warning lamp comes on, you should consult a workshop to repair the problem as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

See "ALL-WHEEL DRIVE SYSTEM" in the index for more information.

CHANGE ENGINE OIL LAMP

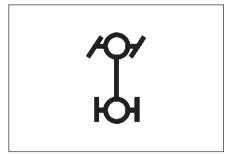
Illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds.

Your vehicle may have an engine oil life system that lets you know when to change the engine oil.

When the change engine oil lamp comes on, it means that the engine oil needs to be changed.

Once the engine oil has been changed, the engine oil life system must be reset. After reset, the change engine oil lamp will go out.







See "ENGINE OIL LIFE SYSTEM" in the index for more information on how to reset the system.

GLOW PLUG INDICATOR (Diesel only)

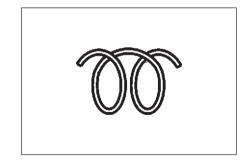
Illuminates when the ignition is ON and stays on for a short time or may go off right away. The waiting time will vary according to the engine coolant temperature.

When the glow plugs are sufficiently heated for cold starting, the light will go out. Then, the engine should be started.

See "STARTING THE DIESEL ENGINE" in the index for more information.

A CAUTION

When the glow plug indicator comes on while driving or the engine cannot be started properly, you should consult a workshop to repair the problem as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.



DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) INDICATOR (Diesel only)

If DPF requires cleaning or previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, DPF indicator illuminates or flashes. Continue driving, keeping engine speed above 2,000 revolutions per minute (Shift down if necessary.) until the indicator goes off. The indicator will

go off as soon as the selfcleaning operation is complete. Cleaning takes place quickest at high engine speeds and loads.

Stopping the journey or switching off the engine during cleaning is not recommended.

A CAUTION

If the cleaning process is interrupted more than once, there is a risk of provoking severe engine damage.

See "DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)" in the index for more information.

WATER IN FUEL WARNING LAMP (Diesel only)

When the water level in the fuel filter exceeds a certain level, this warning lamp comes on. If this condition occurs, immediately drain the water from fuel filter.

The warning lamp will go off when the draining is completed.

To drain the water from fuel filter, you need to consult a workshop to do it. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.





A CAUTION

- The fuel system in the engine may get serious damage if you keep driving while the warning lamp is coming on.
 Prompt correction should be necessary.
- Using low quality fuel could result in serious damage to the engine due to the water or impurities in fuel. Never use low quality fuel.
- If the warning lamp still illuminates after draining the water, you should consult a workshop to repair the problem as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

SSPS WARNING LAMP

The speed sensitive power steering (SSPS) warning lamp comes on as you turn the ignition ON. The lamp should go out after about a few seconds.

If the SSPS warning lamp does either of the following, consult a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised repairer.

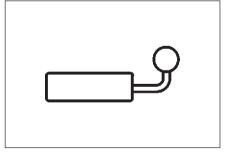
- Does not come on when the ignition is turned ON.
- · Does not go out.
- · Comes on while driving.

See "SPEED SENSITIVE POWER STEERING" in the index.

TRAILER INDICATOR

Illuminates when the trailer is connected to your vehicle. It will go out when the trailer is disconnected.





SECURITY INDICATOR

Indicates the anti-theft system is working.

The security indicator goes out when doors are unlocked using the keyless entry transmitter or key.

The security indicator comes on when you lock the doors using the keyless entry transmitter or key.

See "KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM" in the index.

ANTI-THEFT OFF INDICATOR

If your vehicle has additional anti-theft system related to Thatcham insurance, the anti-theft off indicator illuminates to indicate that you have disabled the intrusion and inclination senor by pressing the button located on the headliner. If you press the button again, the indicator will go out. See "SIREN SOUND" in this section for more information.

LIGHT ON INDICATOR

Notifies the driver when the park lamps have been activated.







2-26 INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

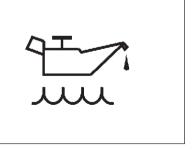
ENGINE OIL LEVEL WARNING LAMP

Illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after a few seconds.

This lamp illuminates when engine oil level is too low.

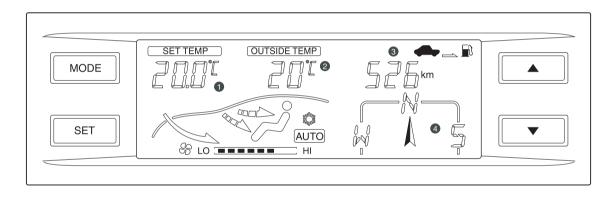
If engine oil level warning lamp comes on, check engine oil level and top up if necessary.

See "CHECKING ENGINE OIL LEVEL" in the index for more information on how to check the engine oil.



DRIVER INFORMATION CENTRE (DIC)

The DIC is the Driver Information Centre that displays the trip computer, display panel for automatic temperature control, outside temperature and compass information when ignition switch is ON.



C7D2008A

- 1. FATC (Fully Automatic Temperature Control) display panel
- 2. Outside temperature
- 3. Trip computer
- 4. Compass

TRIP COMPUTER

Trip computer provides the driver with driving information such as driving distance for remaining fuel, average fuel consumption, average speed and driving time.

Each time you press the MODE button, the display changes in the following order:

Driving distance for remaining fuel \rightarrow Average speed \rightarrow Driving time \rightarrow Average fuel consumption \rightarrow Driving distance for remaining fuel

To reset average speed or driving time or average fuel consumption, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds.

To change the distance unit, do the following:

- 1. Press the SET button for more than 2 seconds. The temperature unit will blink.
- 2. Press the SET button again. The distance unit will blink.
- 3. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to change the distance unit (km ↔ mile).

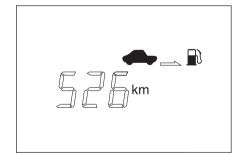
Driving Distance For Remaining Fuel

This mode indicates the estimated driving distance to empty from the current fuel in the fuel tank.

When the distance to empty is less than 50 km (30 miles), --- will display.

NOTE

 The driving distance for remaining fuel can differ from the actual distance according to driving conditions, driving pattern or vehicle speed.



Average Speed

This mode indicates the average speed. To reset the average speed to zero, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds.

Driving Time

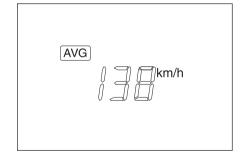
This mode indicates the total driving time. To reset the driving time to zero, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds. The driving time will be initialised to 0:00 after being displayed to 99:59.

Average Fuel Consumption

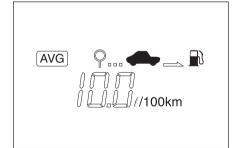
This mode indicates the vehicle's average fuel consumption.

NOTE

- Average fuel consumption is reset to 10.0 if the battery is disconnected.
- To reset the average fuel consumption to zero, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds.







NOTE

- The average fuel consumption can differ from the actual average fuel consumption according to driving conditions.
- The average fuel consumption can vary according to the driving conditions, driving pattern or vehicle speed.

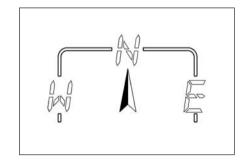
COMPASS

This displays the vehicle's driving direction to 8-direction (N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W, NW).

Compass Calibration

Whenever the DIC or the battery is disconnected, the DIC must be recalibrated. To do this, the vehicle must be driven through 360°. Until calibrated the compass will not function correctly.

1. If you press the MODE and SET button simultaneously for more than 2 seconds, the compass display flashes.



- 2. Turn the vehicle around 1 complete circle within 90 seconds slowly, then the calibration will be accomplished.
- When the calibration is finished, the compass display does not flash anymore. You can turn around to any direction, left or right.

If enough space is not available to turn around 1 circle, turn the vehicle around as shown in the below figure.

Release conditions for the compass calibration

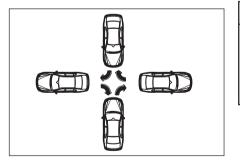
- Press the SET button twice continuously.
- When the vehicle is not turned within 90 seconds after calibration mode started.

A CAUTION

If there are mobile telephones or magnetic bodies around the DIC, the compass may not be operated properly.

NOTE

- The direction will be displayed while driving.
- If the compass display continues to flash, turn around again slowly until it goes off.



NOTE

In the compass calibration mode, press the SET button to move to deflection calibration mode. At that time, press ▲ or ▼ button to adjust deflection calibration value.

FATC DISPLAY PANEL/OUTSIDE TEMPERATURE

See "AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL" in the index.

SWITCHES AND CONTROLS LIGHT SWITCH

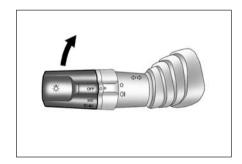
To turn the head, tail and parking lamps on or off, twist the end of the combination switch lever.

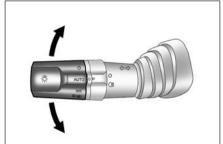
The light switch has three positions which activate various lamp functions as follows:

- **OFF**: All the lights are off.
- -00-: The parking lamps, tail lamps, number plate lamps, and instrument panel lamps are illuminated.
- The low-beam headlamps and all of the above lamps are illuminated.

The light switch with automatic lamp control has four positions which activate various lamp functions as follows:

- (): All the lights are off.
- •-\00-: The parking lamps, tail lamps, number plate lamps, and instrument panel lamps are illuminated.
- ED: The low-beam headlamps and the lamps to come on in the position -00-are illuminated.





To turn the automatic lamp control off, turn the light switch lever to the OFF position. The lever will return automatically to its normal original when released.

To turn the automatic lamp control on, turn the light switch lever to the OFF position again.

A CAUTION

In order for this feature to work properly, be sure not to place stickers or other items over the sunlight sensor located in front of the windscreen defroster vents. Doing so could cause the sensor to malfunction.

NOTE

If you open a driver's door or when you press UNLOCK button on the remote keyless entry transmitter, instrument panel lamps will come on automatically and stay on for about 30 seconds.

DIMMER SWITCH

The dimmer switch controls the brightness of the instrument panel lamps.

To dim the panel illumination, push the button and turn it clockwise.

To brighten the illumination, push the button and turn it counterclockwise.

HEADLAMP LEVELLING SWITCH

With the low beam switched on, adjust headlamp range to suit the vehicle load.

- 0 = Front seat occupied
- 1 = All seats occupied
- 2 = All seats occupied and load in the luggage compartment
- 3 = Driver's seat occupied and load in the luggage compartment





DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS

If so equipped, the daytime running lights illuminates automatically when the engine is started.

The daytime running lights will turn off under the following conditions:

- · Engine is stopped.
- · Parking lamps on.
- · Low-beam lamps on.

LAMPS ON REMINDER

If you open the driver's door with the ignition off and the light switch is in the position -00-or \bigcirc 0 you will hear a warning chime. But, when you turn the lamps on again after tunring them off while warning chime sounds, you will not hear a warning chime.

BATTERY RUNDOWN PROTECTION

Your vehicle has a feature to help prevent you from draining the battery in case you accidentally leave on the lamps like headlamps, parking lamps, fog lamps, etc. If you leave any of these lamps on, they will automatically turn off after 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to the OFF position.

Battery rundown protection will not operate when you turn the lamps on 10 minutes after this feature operated.

DOOR-TO-DOOR LIGHT FUNCTION

The door-to-door light function provides a period of exterior lighting as you leave the area around your vehicle when it is dark enough outside. The feature is activated when the exterior lamps are on due to the automatic lamp control feature, and when the ignition is turned off.

APPROACHING LIGHTING

The feature is activated when the light switch is in the AUTO position and when it is dark enough outside.

When you press the UNLOCK button on the remote keyless entry to get in your vehicle, hazard lamps flash twice and the exterior lamps illuminate automatically for about 20 seconds.

WIPER ACTIVATED LIGHTING

The feature is activated when the light switch is in the AUTO position.

If the windscreen wipers continue to operate 8 cycles, the exterior lamps will illuminate automatically.

INDICATOR STALK

RIGHT turn: Move the indicator stalk up.

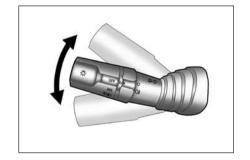
LEFT turn: Move the indicator stalk down.

The turn signal will shut off automatically and the lever will return to its normal position after you have completed the turn.

When changing lanes, move the indicator stalk part way and hold it there. When you release the lever, it will return to its normal position.

NOTE

When you move the indicator stalk lightly upward or downward and release it, the turn signal lamps will operate automatically three times.



HIGH BEAM SWITCH

To turn the high-beam headlamps on:

- Make sure the low-beam headlamps are on.
- Push the combination switch lever toward the instrument panel.

The headlamp high-beam indicator illuminates when headlamps are on high beam.

To switch from high-beam headlamps to low-beam, pull the combination switch lever back toward you, to its normal position.

A CAUTION

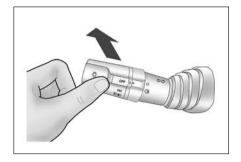
 Always switch the high-beam headlamps to low-beam when you approach on coming vehicles or when other vehicles are ahead.

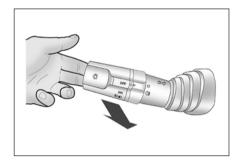
High-beam headlamps can temporarily blind other drivers, which could result in a collision.

PASSING LIGHT SWITCH

To flash the high-beam headlamps, pull the combination switch lever toward you and release it. The lever will return to its normal position when you release it.

The high-beam headlamps will stay on as long as you hold the combination switch lever toward you.





FRONT FOG LAMP SWITCH

Fog lamps provide:

- Extra illumination to the sides of the road ahead.
- Improved visibility in fog or snow.

To turn the fog lamps on:

- Make sure the light switch is in the -00- or position.
- Rotate the ring on the middle of the light switch lever to $\not\equiv 0$. The ring will return automatically to its normal position when released.

The front fog lamp indicator in the instrument panel illuminates when the fog lamps are turned on.

To turn the fog lamps off, rotate the ring to #O position again. The front fog lamp indicator will go off.

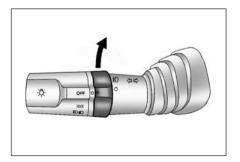
If your vehicle has the automatic lamp control, parking lamps and low beam headlamps will come on simultaneously when turning on the front fog lamps.

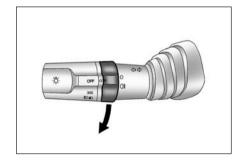
REAR FOG LAMP SWITCH

To turn the rear fog lamps on, rotate the ring on the middle of the light switch lever to ()\(\frac{1}{2}\) when the low beam headlamps are on, or when the parking lamps and the front fog lamps are on. The ring will return automatically to its normal position when released.

The rear fog lamp indicator in the instrument panel illuminates when the fog lamps are turned on.

To turn the fog lamps off, turn the ring to ↑ position again. The rear fog lamp indicator will go off.





If your vehicle has the automatic lamp control, parking lamps and low beam headlamps will come on simultaneously when turning on the rear fog lamps.

WINDSCREEN WIPERS

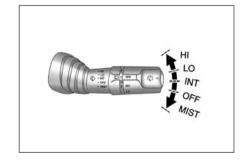
A CAUTION

- Less than clear vision for the driver can lead to an accident resulting in personal injury and damage to your vehicle or other property.
- Do not operate the windscreen wipers when the windscreen is dry or obstructed, as with snow or ice. Using the wipers on an obstructed windscreen can damage the wiper blades, wiper motor, and glass.
- Check blades are not frozen to windows before operating in cold weather. Wiper operation while blade is frozen can damage wiper motor.

To operate the windscreen wipers, turn the ignition ACC or ON and move the windscreen wiper/washer lever upward.

The windscreen wipers operate in the following four positions:

- **OFF**: System off. Default position.
- INT: Intermittent operation. (Move the lever to this position to choose a delayed wiping cycle. Rotate the intermittent adjustment band to set for shorter or longer delay cycles. S mean the wiper movement is less frequent and F mean the wiper movement is more frequent. During intermittent wiping mode, the cycle delay time is also affected by vehicle speed.



As your vehicle speed increases, your delay cycle time will automatically decrease.)

- **LO**: Continuous wipe, slow speed. Lever up two levels.
- HI: Continuous wipe, fast speed. Lever up three levels.

NOTE

Wiper blades will wear out and not wipe properly reducing forward vision.

· Replace worn wiper blades.

Misting function

To operate the windscreen wipers once in case of light rain or mist, lightly move the windscreen wiper/washer lever downward and release it.

The lever will return automatically to its normal position when released.

The wipers will operate through one cycle.

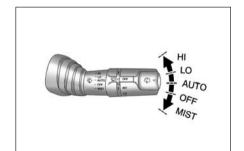
Automatic wipers with rain sensor

The rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the windscreen wipers.

To operate the windscreen wipers automatically, move the windscreen wiper/washer lever toward the AUTO position.

The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by turning the band of the windscreen wiper/ washer lever up or down.

To turn the system off, move the windscreen wiper/washer lever toward the OFF position.



A CAUTION

Do not switch on the windscreen wipers or set them to automatic operation with rain sensor in car washes. This could damage the wiper blades or wiper system.

The windscreen wipers operate once to check the system when the ignition switch is turned to ACC while the wiper lever is in the AUTO position.

So as to ensure proper operation of the rain sensor, the sensor field must be free from dust and dirt. Vehicles with rain sensor can be identified by the sensor field near the top of the windscreen.

The wipers are not operated when select lever of automatic transaxle is in "N" position and vehicle speed is lower than 5km/h.

WINDSCREEN WASHER

A CAUTION

- Less than clear vision for the driver can lead to an accident resulting in personal injury and damage to your vehicle or other property.
- Do not spray washer fluid on the windscreen in freezing weather.
- Warm the windscreen before you operate the windscreen washer.

Washer fluid can form ice on a frozen windscreen and obstruct your vision.

To spray washer fluid on the windscreen:

- Turn the ignition ACC or ON.
- Pull the windscreen wiper / washer lever toward you.

When you pull the lever for less than 0.6 seconds, the following happens:

• Washer fluid sprays onto the windscreen. (The windscreen wipers do not operate)

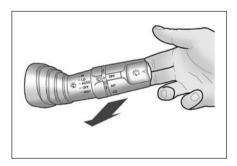
When you pull the lever for more than 0.6 seconds:

- Washer fluid sprays onto the windscreen.
- The windscreen wipers operate for 2 cycles after the lever is released and 1 more cycle after 3 seconds.

A CAUTION

 Do not operate the windscreen washer continuously for more than 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty.

This can cause the washer motor to overheat resulting in costly repairs.



Washer fluid refill

For the recommended procedure for refilling your windscreen washer reservoir, see "WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID" in the index.

TAILGATE WINDOW WIPER AND WASHER

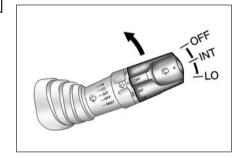
A CAUTION

- Less than clear vision for the driver can lead to an accident resulting in personal injury and damage to your vehicle or other property.
- Do not operate the tailgate window wiper when the tailgate window is dry or obstructed, as with snow or ice.
 Using the wiper on an obstructed window can damage the wiper blades, wiper motor, and glass.
- Check blade is not frozen to window before operating in cold weather. Wiper operation while blade is frozen can damage wiper motor.

To operate the tailgate wiper, turn the ignition ACC or ON and rotate the end of the windscreen wiper/washer lever upward.

The tailgate wiper operates in the following three positions:

- **OFF**: System off. Default position.
- INT: Intermittent operation.
- LO: Continuous wipe, slow speed.



2-42 INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

To spray washer fluid on the tailgate window, press the button at the end of the lever until the washers begin. When you release the button, the washers will stop, but the wipers will continue to wipe for about three times.

A CAUTION

- Do not spray washer fluid on the tailgate window in freezing weather.
- Warm the tailgate window before you operate the tailgate window washer.

Washer fluid can form ice on a frozen tailgate window and obstruct your vision.

A CAUTION

 Do not operate the tailgate window washer continuously for more than 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty.

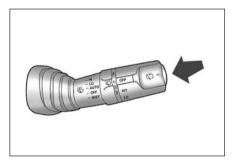
This can cause the washer motor to overheat resulting in costly repairs.

Rear smart wiper

To achieve a clear vision in the rain, the rear wiper will operate automatically when you select reverse gear while the front wiper is operating.

Washer fluid refill

For the recommended procedure for refilling your windscreen washer reservoir, see "WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID" in the index.



HEADLAMP WASHER

Your vehicle may have headlamp washers. The headlamp washers clear debris from the headlamp lenses.

To wash the headlamps, press the washer button located on the left side of the instrument panel when the headlamps are turned on. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the headlamps. Then the headlamp washer system is disabled for about 2 minutes. If washer fluid level is low, the washer system cannot be operated for about 4 minutes after spraying.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER BUTTON

Use hazard warning flashers in the following situations:

- To warn others of emergency conditions.
- When your vehicle is in a traffic hazard.

You can operate the hazard flash function with the ignition ON or OFF.

To activate the hazard warning flashers, push the hazard warning flasher button.

To turn off the flashers, push the button again.

REAR WINDOW AND OUTSIDE MIRROR DEFROSTER BUTTON

A CAUTION

Do not use the defroster under the following conditions:

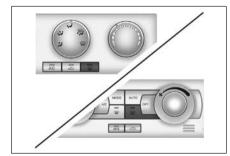
- Engine is not running.
- You are just starting your vehicle.
- There is a buildup of snow or ice on the rear window or windscreen.

If you use your vehicle's defroster under these conditions, you can discharge your vehicle's battery.

This can damage your vehicle, requiring the replacement of some parts.







To turn the defroster on, turn the ignition to ON and push the rear window and outside mirror defroster button. The indicator light in the button will illuminate.

The defroster will be automatically turned off after approximately 15 minutes.

To turn the defroster off manually, push the button again.

Make sure you turn the defroster off after achieving clear vision.

A CAUTION

Lack of proper maintenance can damage your vehicle's heater element or scratch the glass.

- Do not use sharp instruments or abrasive window cleaners on your vehicle's rear window.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater element when you clean or work around the rear window.

Less than clear vision for the driver can lead to an accident resulting in personal injuries and damage to your vehicle or other property.

Windscreen heating

Your vehicle may have a heated front windscreen which can be used to defrost it. This feature will only work when the ignition is turned to ON.

There is a heated element along the bottom of the windscreen used to heat the windscreen.

Press the rear window and outside mirror defroster button to heat the windscreen. An indicator light in the button will come on to let you know that the feature is activated.

The front windscreen heater will turn off about 15 minutes after the button is pressed. It can also be turned off by pressing the button again or by turning off the engine.

FRONT PASSENGER'S SAFETY BELT WARNING LAMP

Front passenger's safety belt warning lamp comes on for about a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned ON, and then goes out. This means that the system performs self-checking. If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the lamp will continue to go out.

After the front passenger seat is occupied and the engine is started, unless the front passenger's safety belt is securely fastened, the lamp will flash for about 90 seconds and then illuminate until the front passenger's safety belt is fastened.

After that, if the vehicle speed goes over about 22km/h, the lamp will flash again along with the warning chime for about 90 seconds and then illuminate until the front passenger's safety belt is fastened.

NOTE

If you fasten the front passenger's safety belt when the warming lamp comes on or flashes after the system performs self-checking, the safety belt warning lamp will go out immediately.

If you want to stop the warning chime instead of fastening the safety belt, do the followings: When the ignition is ON, insert the latch plate into safety belt buckle and then extract it. This opeartion should be performed two times within 10 seconds.

The warning chime will be able to sound again a few minutes after the ignition is OFF.

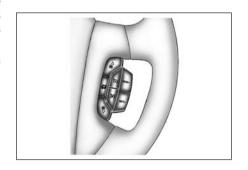


If your vehicle has cruise control, you can maintain a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. This can really help on long trips. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 40 km/h (25 mph).

When you apply your brakes or press the M button, the cruise control shuts off.

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the optional traction control system begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, you may turn the cruise control back on





A CAUTION

- Cruise control can be dangerous where you can't drive safely at a steady speed. So, don't use your cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.
- Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tyre traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Don't use cruise control on slippery roads.

SETTING CRUISE CONTROL

- Press the Subutton, located on the right side of the steering wheel, to turn cruise control on.
- 2. Accelerate to the speed you want.
- 3. Press the SET/- button and release it. An indicator light on the instrument panel cluster will come on to show you that the cruise control is on.
- 4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

A CAUTION

If you leave your cruise control on when you're not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you don't want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.

RESUMING A SET SPEED

Suppose you set your cruise control at a desired speed and then you apply the brake pedal or press the 🔀 button. This, of course, shuts off the cruise control. But you don't need to reset it. Once you're going about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, you can tap the RES/+ button.

You'll go right back up to your chosen speed and stay there.

If you hold the RES/+ button longer, the vehicle will keep going faster until you release the button, apply the brake pedal or press the button. So unless you want to go faster, do not hold the RES/+ button.

INCREASING SPEED WHILE USING CRUISE CONTROL

There are two ways to go to a higher speed:

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to a higher speed. Press the SET/- button, then release the button and the accelerator pedal. You will now cruise at the higher speed.
- Press the RES/+ button. Hold it there until you get up to the speed you want, and then release the button. To increase your speed in very small amounts, tap the RES/+ button and then release it. Each time you do this, your vehicle will go about 2 km/h (1.2 mph) faster. The accelerate feature will only work after you turn on the cruise control by pressing the SET/- button.

REDUCING SPEED WHILE USING CRUISE CONTROL

There are two ways to reduce your speed while using cruise control:

- Press the SET/- button until you reach the lower speed you want, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, tap the SET/- button. Each time you do this, you will go about 2 km/h (1.2 mph) slower.

PASSING ANOTHER VEHICLE WHILE USING CRUISE CONTROL

Use the accelerator pedal to increase your speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, your vehicle will slow down to the cruise control speed you set earlier.

USING CRUISE CONTROL ON HILLS

How well your cruise control will work on hills depends upon your speed, load and the steepness of the hills. When going up a steep hill, you may have to step on the accelerator pedal

to maintain your speed. When going downhill, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep your speed down. Of course, applying the brake pedal takes you out of cruise control. Many drivers find this to be too much trouble and don't use cruise control on steep hills.

DISENGAGING CRUISE CONTROL

There are several ways to turn off the cruise control:

 Step lightly on the brake pedal or press the state button, or press the clutch pedal, if you have a manual transaxle.

KEYS

Two keys are provided with your new vehicle.

The key number is stamped on the key number plate. For vehicle security, keep the key number plate in a safe place, not in the vehicle. You should also record the key number in a safe place, not in the vehicle.

This deters unauthorised persons from obtaining a duplicate key.

WARNING

Do not leave the key in the vehicle.

- Lock the vehicle.
- Take the key with you.

KEY WITH FOLDAWAY KEY SECTION

Press button to extend. Press button to retract and audibly engage key section.

NOTE

In case of loss, replacement keys are available from your authorised Chevrolet repairer by quoting the key number and vehicle identification number (VIN).

See "IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS" in the index to know where you can find the VIN.

To protect your car from theft, an electronic immobilisation system has been installed in your vehicle. Only keys with the correct electronic code can be used to start the car. Even if a key has the same profile it will not start the engine if the electronic code is incorrect. Always obtain replacement or additional keys from your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

Up to 10 keys can be matched to your vehicle at the same time.

See "IMMOBILISER" in the index.

KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM

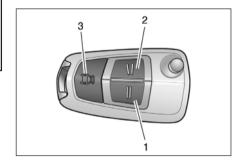
The keyless entry system lets you lock and unlock the doors within a range of about 20 feet (6m) away from your vehicle using the transmitter.

The LED on the transmitter flashes to show that it is operational.

- LOCK button: Locks all doors. Hazard lamps will flash once and the anti-theft system will be activated.
- 2. UNLOCK button: Unlocks all doors. Hazard lamps will flash twice and anti-theft system will be deactivated.

In some countries, to unlock driver's door, press the UNLOCK button once.

To unlock all doors, press the UNLOCK button again within 3 seconds.



3. TAILGATE WINDOW button: Releases the tailgate window when pressed for about 1 second.

NOTE

The operating range of the transmitter will vary due to environmental conditions.

NOTE

LOCK, UNLOCK and TAILGATE WINDOW buttons are not operated while the key is in the ignition switch.

NOTE

When you press UNLOCK button on the remote keyless entry transmitter, instrument panel lamps will come on automatically and stay on for about 30 seconds until the ignition switch is in the ACC position.

DOOR LOCK and ANTI-THEFT MODE ACTIVATION

- 1. Close all windows.
- 2. Turn the ignition key to LOCK and remove the key.
- 3. Have all passengers exit the vehicle.
- 4. Close all doors, bonnet and tailgate.
- Press and release LOCK button on the transmitter.

The LED on the transmitter will flash.

- · All doors lock.
- Hazard warning lamps flash once.
- Anti-theft mode is activated after about 30 seconds.

If the key is inserted into the ignition key hole, the transmitter will not operate the anti-theft system.

NOTE

The system can be activated even if the windows are open. Close all the windows and doors before leaving the vehicle.

NOTE

If pressing the LOCK button on the transmitter when all doors, bonnet and tailgate are not completely closed, the anti-theft system is in the open state at this point and the security indicator will flash quickly. The anti-theft system transits to the locked state when all doors, bonnet and tailgate are completely closed. The security indicator will illuminate steady when in the locked state. If the LOCK button is pressed after all doors, bonnet and tailgate have been closed, the open state will be bypassed and the system will transit directly to the locked state with the security indicator on steady.

NOTE

The anti-theft system is activated if the doors are locked manually as well as the remote keyless entry transmitter is used.

6. Confirm that the security indicator flashes slowly after illuminating for approximately 30 seconds from the time that the system has entered the locked state. If LOCK button on the transmitter is pressed a second time, the anti-theft system will activate immediately, bypassing the 30 seconds delay. The security indicator is located in the right area of the clock. See "SECURITY INDICATOR" in the index.

M WARNING

- Do not lock the vehicle if anyone is to be left inside the vehicle.
- Never leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle can increase more rapidly and reach much higher levels than the temperature outside.

This can result in serious injury or death.

HORN SOUND

The system provides visual (exterior lamps blink) sign and audible (horns pulse) sound for about 30 seconds when any of the doors, tailgate or the bonnet are opened without using the key or pressing the unlock button on the transmitter.

To stop the horn sound

- Press the LOCK or UNLOCK button on the transmitter.
- Unlock the driver's door with a key.
 (In some countries, doing so may not stop the horn sound. Press the LOCK or UNLOCK button to stop the sound.

If the unauthorised entry still exists, the alarm sound will be activated with a periodic repeat.

If the system does not operate as described above, have it checked by a workshop. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

SIREN SOUND

If your vehicle has additional anti-theft system related to Thatcham insurance, it has intrusion sensor, inclination sensor and glass breakage detection sensor.

This system monitors the interior space through these sensors and activates the siren if an intrusion into the passenger compartment is detected, the tires are stolen or the unintended towing occurs.

To stop the siren

• Press the LOCK or UNLOCK button on the transmitter.

If the unauthorized entry still exists, the siren sound will be activated with a periodic repeat.

NOTE

Alarming will sound if a door is opened by a key when anti theft mode is activated.

Open the door using UNLOCK button on the transmitter.

NOTE

Tap the key hole or heat the key if the door does not open with freezing key hole in cold weather.

WARNING

Do not use the transmitter to lock the vehicle if anyone is to be left inside.

The transmitter activates interior protection, which will trigger the siren if movement is detected inside the vehicle.

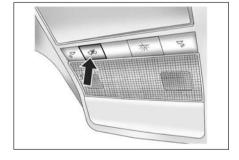
Never leave children or pets alone in your vehicle.

The temperature inside the vehicle can increase more rapidly and reach much higher levels than the temperature outside.

This can result in serious injury or death.

If you want to turn off the additional antitheft system, press the button located on the head-liner. Anti-theft off indicator will come on.

When you activate the additional anti-theft system by pressing the button again, antitheft off indicator will go out.



DOOR UNLOCK and ANTI-THEFT MODE DEACTIVATION

- 1. Unlock the driver's door with a key. Or,
- 2. Press and release UNLOCK button on the transmitter.
 - The LED on the transmitter will flash.
 - All the doors unlock.
 - · Hazard warning lamps flash twice.
 - Anti-theft mode is deactivated.

In some countries, unlocking the driver door with a key may sound alarm. Make sure to press the UNLOCK button on the transmitter to unlock doors.

Auto door relock

If the door is not opened or the engine is not started within 30 seconds after disarming the system using the transmitter, all the doors are automatically locked and the anti-theft mode is reactivated.

TRANSMITTER

Every transmitter is electronically coded to prevent another transmitter from unlocking your vehicle.

If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased from your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

If you need a new transmitter or extras, bring the remaining transmitter with you when you go to your authorised Chevrolet repairer. When the authorised Chevrolet repairer matches the replacement transmitter to your vehicle, the remaining transmitter must also be matched to the new code.

Once the new transmitter is electronically coded, the lost transmitter will not unlock your vehicle.

Up to 4 transmitters can be matched to your vehicle at a same time.

Battery replacement

If the LED fails to illuminate, the transmitter can still be used for a while. However, it is an 4. Close the cover so that it audibly engages indication that a new battery is needed.

NOTE

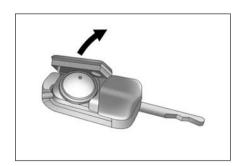
Use CR2032 (or equivalent) replacement battery.

- 1. Open the cover by a hand.
- 2. Remove the used battery. Avoid touching the circuit board to other components.

- 3. Install the new battery. Be sure the positive side(+) faces up toward the base.
- in the key part.
- 5. Check the operation of the transmitter with vour vehicle.

A CAUTION

Avoid touching the flat surfaces of the battery with your bare fingers. Handling will shorten battery life.



NOTE

Used lithium batteries can harm the environment.

- Follow local recycling laws for disposal.
- Do not discard with household refuse.

NOTE

In order to keep the transmitter working properly, follow these guidelines:

- Avoid dropping the transmitter.
- Do not place heavy objects on the transmitter.
- Keep the transmitter away from water and direct sunlight. If the transmitter gets wet, wipe it with a soft cloth.

DOOR LOCKS

WARNING

The temperature inside the vehicle can increase rapidly and reach much higher levels than temperature outside.

• Do not leave unattended children or pets in your vehicle.

Death or serious injury can occur.

Children can operate electric windows, other controls, or move vehicle.

• Do not leave key in vehicle with children.

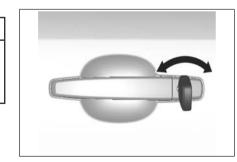
These actions can result in serious injury or death.

Manually lock or unlock the driver's door by turning the key in the key slot.

A CAUTION

 Lock all doors and take the key with you when you leave vehicle unattended.

Unlocked vehicles invite theft.



2-54 INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

To lock any door from the inside, pull the door lock button.

To unlock any door from the inside, push the door lock button.

You can also lock or unlock the doors with the To open a door from the inside or outside, pull door lock switches on the driver's door trim the door handle. pad.

Press the left part of the switch to lock the doors.

To unlock the doors, press the right part of the switch.

NOTE

Grease should be applied to the door check latch and hinge at regular intervals or if a noise can be heard when opening, closing the door or during driving.

The driver's door and the front passenger's door can be opened by pulling the door handle from the inside even if the doors are locked with the door lock button.





DEADLOCK

For further protection when leaving the vehicle, you can deadlock the doors. Deadlocking electronically jams all the electric locks so that no door can be opened, even if entry is gained by breaking glass.

WARNING

Do not use deadlock if there are people in the vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

To engage deadlock, do one of the following:

- Press the LOCK button twice in succession. Press the LOCK button once to lock the vehicle, then press it again (within 3 seconds) to engage the deadlock
- Insert the key in the driver door lock and turn the key twice continuously towards the rear of the vehicle. That is, once to lock the doors, then a second time to engage the deadlock.

To disengage deadlock, press UNLOCK button on the key. This unlocks the doors.

NOTE

Deadlock function operates when all doors and tailgate are closed.

NOTE

Disengaging the deadlock occurs when unlocking the doors in the normal way.

CENTRAL DOOR LOCKING SYSTEM

You can activate the central door locking system from the driver's door. This system allows you to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate from the driver's door, using either the key or keyless remote (from outside) or the door lock switch. (from inside)

CHILD SECURITY DOOR LOCK

Your car has a child security door lock on each rear door. These locks prevent passengers, especially children, from accidentally opening the rear doors from the inside by pulling the door handle.

A CAUTION

 Do not pull the inside door handle while the child security door lock is set to lock position.

To do so can damage the inside door handle.

To activate the child security door locks:

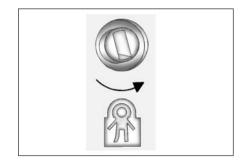
- 1. Open the rear door you intend to lock.
- 2. Locate the child security lock switch on the door edge, near the centre.
- 3. Insert the key into the lock above the rear door security lock label and turn it to the horizontal position.
- 4. Close the door.

NOTE

Each rear door has its own lock.

Each rear door child security lock must be activated manually and separately, left and right. To open a rear door when the child security door lock is activated, unlock the door from the inside and open the door from the outside.

To cancel the child security door lock, insert the key into the slot and turn it to the vertical position.



ELECTRIC WINDOWS

You may operate the electric windows when the ignition switch is ACC or ON by using the electric window switches on each door panel.

WARNING

Children can operate and become entrapped in electric windows.

• Do not leave your keys or unattended children in your car.

Serious injury or death can occur from misuse of electric windows.

To raise the window, lift up on the switch.

To lower the window, press down on the switch.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

WARNING

Body parts outside vehicle can be struck by passing objects.

• Keep all parts of body inside vehicle.

NOTE

The rear windows do not open fully.



Each window can be operated for up to 10 minutes or until a door is opened when the ignition key is in the LOCK position or out of the ignition.

AUTO DOWN

The driver's window has an auto down function

To lower the window, press down firmly, then release the switch. The window will open automatically until it is fully open. To stop the window while it is opening, press the switch again.

To raise the window, pull up and hold the switch. To stop the window, release the switch.

AUTO UP/DOWN

The driver's window has an auto up/down function.

To fully open the window automatically, press the switch fully down. To fully close the window automatically, pull the switch fully up. In automatic operation, the window will fully open or close even if you let go of the switch.

To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or depress and release the switch to the opposite direction of the movement.

Anti-pinch function

In case there is an obstacle detection while the driver's window is closed automatically, the window will be opened automatically 11cm at least for safety.

WARNING

Anti-pinch function may not operate after six consecutive times operation. Do not operate the window switch with no purpose.



ELECTRIC WINDOW LOCK BUTTON

The electric window lock button allows you to lock the rear and passenger window buttons. With the lock on, the rear and passenger windows can only be operated from the driver's window control panel.

WARNING

Children can operate and become entrapped in electric windows. Serious injury or death can occur.

• Use electric window lock when children are in back seat.

TAILGATE

To open the tailgate, insert the key into the key slot and turn it counterclockwise. Pull up the handle above the number plate and lift the tailgate.

To close tailgate, push it down so it latches securely.

The tailgate can be locked or unlocked by central door locking system. See "Central Door Locking System" in the index.

Make sure your hands and any other body parts, as well as those of other persons, are completely away from the tailgate closure area.

A CAUTION

When opening or closing the tailgate, be sure to check it is free from obstructions.





WARNING

Driving the vehicle with the tailgate or the tailgate window open can allow exhaust gases to enter passenger compartment.

 Do not drive with tailgate open. If you must drive this way, close all other windows, place in 'FRESH AIR MODE', open the centre/side vents, and run blower at high speed. (See "VENTI-LATION" in the index)

Exhaust gases are usually poisonous and can cause injury or death.

TAILGATE WINDOW RELEASE BUTTON

You can open the tailgate window by pressing the tailgate window release button located in the driver's door trim.

The tailgate window can be also opened by pressing the tailgate window button on the remote key. See "REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM" in the index.

After opening, hold the handle on the tailgate window and lift it.

To close tailgate window, push it down so it latches securely. It locks automatically.

A CAUTION

- Do not operate the tailgate window release button while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not operate the vehicle with the tailgate window open.





BONNET

To open the bonnet:

- 1. Pull bonnet release handle located at the lower left side of the instrument panel.
- 2. Reach under front edge of the bonnet and push bonnet release lever upward.
- 3. Lift the bonnet gently. Two air-pressurised support rods will hold the bonnet open.

To close the bonnet:

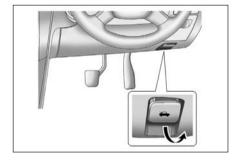
- Make sure hands and other body parts, as well as those of other persons, are completely away from the engine compartment and bonnet-to-body edges.
- 2. Lower the bonnet, allowing it to drop from a height of about 30cm (1 foot).
- 3. Make sure the bonnet is locked firmly in place.

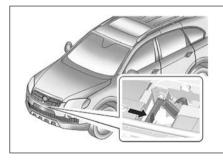
WARNING

Always observe the following precautions:

- Pull on the front edge of the bonnet to make sure it is latched securely before you drive your vehicle.
- Do not pull the bonnet release handle while your vehicle is moving.
- Do not move your vehicle with the bonnet open. An open bonnet will obscure the driver's vision.

Operating your vehicle with the bonnet open can lead to a collision resulting in damage to your vehicle, to other property, personal injury or even death.





INTERIOR COURTESY LAMPS

WARNING

• Avoid using the dome lamp and map lights while driving in the dark.

A lit passenger compartment reduces visibility in the dark, and could cause a collision.

DOME LAMP

Press the button to turn on the dome lamps.

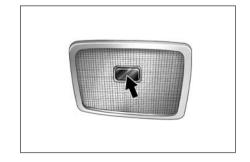
Press the button again to turn the lamps off.

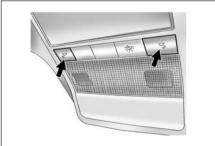
Centre/rear dome lamps come on when you open a door or tailgate. If you continue to open a door or tailgate, the lamps will stay on for about 10 minutes. If all doors and tailgate are closed, the lamps dim gradually after about 10 seconds instead of immediately turning off.

MAP LIGHT

Push the button to illuminate the front map light.

Push again to turn off the light.





You can deactivate dome lamps (when the button is not pressed), front door step lamps and key hole lamp by pressing the button.

FRONT DOOR STEP LAMP

Front door step lamps come on when you open a door. If you continue to open a door, the lamps will stay on for about 10 minutes. If all doors are closed, the lamp stays on for about 10 seconds and then goes out.

Front door step lamps can be immediately turned off by pushing the button located on the headliner.

SUNGLASS HOLDER

To open the sunglass holder behind the map light, push on the rear part of the cover.

To close it, pull up and push it until it latches.







ELECTRIC SUNROOF

You may operate the electric sunroof when the ignition is ACC or ON.

A CAUTION

Always observe the following precautions:

- Do not stick body parts or objects out the sunroof opening.
- Make sure the sunroof opening is clear, inside and outside, before opening or closing the sunroof.
- Do not place heavy objects on or around the sunroof.
- Keep debris off the outside of the sunroof.
- When leaving the vehicle unattended, close sunroof fully.

As in all other times, all occupants must wear their safety belts whether the sunroof is open or closed.

Failure to observe these precautions can result in injury or damage to your vehicle.

SLIDING THE SUNROOF

- To open the sunroof, press the switch rearward. It will open automatically to about 350mm until you press the switch forward, upward or downward. When pressing the switch rearward once more, the sunroof will open fully.
- To close the sunroof, press and hold the switch forward, upward or downward.

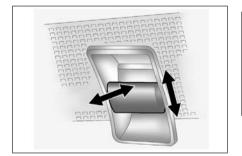
Release the switch when the sunroof reaches the desired position.

TILTING THE SUNROOF

- To tilt the sunroof up, press and hold the switch upward. Release the switch when the sunroof reaches the desired position.
- To return the sunroof to its original position, press and hold the switch downward.
 Release the switch when the sunroof reaches the desired position.

NOTE

The sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes or until a door is opened when the ignition key is in the LOCK position or out of the ignition.



A CAUTION

Periodically inspect the guide rail for dirt and clean if any dirt is accumulated. If there is any dirt around the rubber of the sunroof, noise can be produced while operating the sunroof.

DIGITAL CLOCK

When the ignition is ACC or ON, the digital clock displays the time. The digital clock has three adjusting buttons.

H: Hour button.

- To advance 1 hour, press the H button.
- To advance more than 1 hour, press and hour.

M: Minute button.

- To advance 1 minute, press the M button.
- To advance more than 1 minute, press and hold the M button until you reach the correct minute.

S : Set button.

To reset the time to the nearest hour, press the S button.

- If you press this button when the time is between 8:00 and 8:29 for example, the display will reset to 8:00.
- hold the H button until you reach the correct If you press this button while the time is between 8:30 and 8:59 for example, the display will reset to 9:00.

NOTE

Remember to reset your vehicle's clock each time you disconnect and then reconnect the battery or replace a fuse.

CIGAR LIGHTER AND **ACCESSORY POWER OUTLET**

A CAUTION

The barrel of an operating cigar lighter can become very hot.

· Do not touch the barrel of the cigar lighter and do not allow children to operate or play with the cigar lighter.

This hot element can cause personal injuries and damage to your vehicle or other property.





To operate the cigar lighter:

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC or ON.
- Push the lighter in all the way.

The cigar lighter will pop out automatically when it is ready to use.

A CAUTION

Overheating the cigar lighter can damage the heating element and the lighter itself.

• Do not hold the lighter in while it is heating.

This can cause the lighter to overheat.

A CAUTION

Trying to operate a malfunctioning cigar lighter can be dangerous.

 If the heated cigar lighter does not pop out within 30 seconds, pull it out and ask a workshop to repair it. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

It can cause injuries and damage to your vehicle.

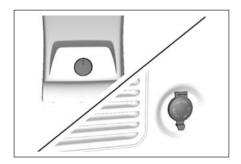
The cigar lighter can be operated for up to 10 minutes or until a door is opened when the ignition key is in the LOCK position or out of the ignition.

ACCESSORY POWER OUTLET

Power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipments such as cellular phone, electric shaver, etc.

Accessory power outlet is located below the rear cup holders. Another power outlet is located on the left side of luggage compartment

Pull the cap out to use the power outlet. When not in use, replace it.



A CAUTION

Battery can be discharged.

 Turn off any electrical equipment when not in use for an extended periods.

This will prevent damage to your battery.

NOTE

Limit for your power outlet is 12V-10A. If you apply any electrical equipment which exceeds 12-10A, power supply will be automatically cut off. Only use equipment within the specifications.

The automatic cut off will blow the fuse.

PORTABLE ASHTRAY

A CAUTION

Cigar and other smoking materials could set them on fire.

• Do not put paper or other flammable items in the ashtray.

An ashtray fire can lead to personal injury or damage to your vehicle or other property.

You can use the portable ashtray in the front cup holder.

To open the ashtray, gently lift the lid of the ashtray. After using, close the lid firmly.

To empty the ashtray for cleaning, slightly rotate upper part of the ashtray counterclockwise and remove it.



SEAT HEATER SWITCH

The seat heater switches are located below the centre console box.

To warm the seat:

- 1. Turn the ignition key on.
- 2. Press the seat heater switch that you want to warm. Indicator in the button will be illuminated.

To turn off the seat heater, press the switch again. Indicator in the button will go out.

WARNING

Prolonged use of the seat heaters could result in burning the vehicle's occupants or damaging delicate clothing materials.

 Do not leave the seat heater on for a long time if you are wearing a thin skirt or trousers.

A CAUTION

The heater element inside the front seats can be damaged.

• Do not subject the front seats to heavy impacts.

A CAUTION

If the temperature continues to rise, turn the switch off and have the system checked by a workshop. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

HORN

To sound the horn, press the horn symbol on either side of your vehicle's steering wheel.

The horn will sound regardless of ignition switch position.





CUP HOLDERS

The cup holders are located in the center console and in the second row seat armrest.

To use the rear cup holder, push the button above the cup holder. The rear cup holder will pop out automatically

GLOVE BOX

A CAUTION

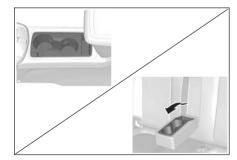
In the case of a collision or a sudden stop, an open glove box presents a hazard.

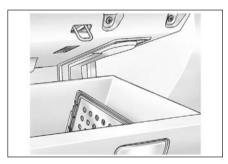
• Do not drive with the glove box open. An open glove box can cause personal injuries or damage to your vehicle in case of a collision.

Open the glove box by pulling the bottom of the handle upward and the glove box lamp will be turned on. Close the glove box with a firm push and the glove box lamp will be turned off.

The inner partition can be removed if you want to store larger items.

After taking inner partition off, keep it in the left side groove of the glove box.





2-70 INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

CONSOLE BOX

FRONT CONSOLE BOX

To open the console box, pull up on the lever and lift lid.

To close the console box, lower the lid and push it down until it latches.

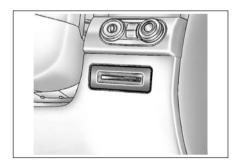
You can use another storage by pressing and pushing the lever on the cupholders.

CARD HOLDER

You can use the card holder by inserting a card into slot.







COIN STORAGE

To open the coin storage, pull the handle on the coin storage door toward you.

To close the coin storage, firmly push the coin storage door shut.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER

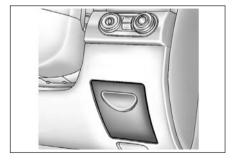
Luggage or other cargo placed in the luggage compartment can be hidden from view by a luggage compartment cover.

To operate the cover, pull the handle of the cover toward you and then insert the retainer into the slot located on both sides of the tailgate openings.

To remove the cover, release the handle after pulling it toward you a little. The cover retracts automatically.

FRONT PASSENGER SEAT UNDERTRAY

To use the front passenger seat undertray, pull up on the end of the tray and pull it toward the instrument panel. Push the tray toward the seat to return it to its original position.







LUGGAGE FLOOR NET

The luggage floor net can help keep small loads from moving during sharp turns or quick starts and stops.

Attach the four net hooks in the metal rings on the each corner of the floor.

LUGGAGE HOLDING NET

You can carry small loads with your optional luggage holding net.

To install the net, hang each loop in the upper corner of the net to both anchors of the back panel and two net hooks in the metal rings on the both lower corner of the floor.

A CAUTION

The luggage holding net is designed for small loads.

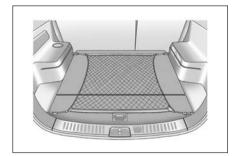
• Do not carry heavy objects in your luggage holding net.

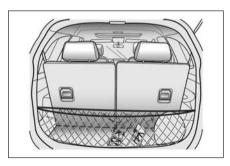
UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

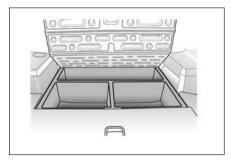
There is storage under the luggage compartment floor. To access the floor storage, pull floor mat handle upward.

A CAUTION

Do not allow items in the storage to extend above the top of the storage. Otherwise, the storage or luggage floor may be damaged.







LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT STORAGE

In the both sides of the luggage compartment floor, there are floor side trays.

SUN VISORS

Your vehicle has padded sun visors to protect the driver and passengers from glare.

You can swing the sun visors up and down, and to the side.

The vanity mirror (both sides) and ticket holder (driver's side) are located on the back of the sun visor.

When opening the cover of the vanity mirror, the sunvisor lamp will illuminate.

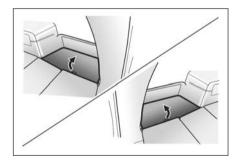
If your vehicle has the driver's sun visor extension feature, you can detach the sun visor from the center mount and slide it along the rod from side-to-side.

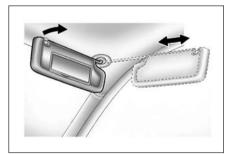
ASSIST GRIP WITH COAT HOOK

Your vehicle has assist grips above the front seat passenger's door and the rear doors. The grip above each rear door includes coat hook.

To use the assist grips, pull down and hold it. The grips will swing up automatically when releasing it.

Passengers can use the grips for assistance in entering / exiting the vehicle, or for handholds during spirited driving.







A CAUTION

Hanging items on your vehicle's assist grips can obstruct the driver's view.

 Do not hang anything on the assist grips, unless they are equipped with a coat hook.

Obstructing the driver's view can lead to an accident resulting in personal injuries and damage to your vehicle or other property.

ROOF RACK

The roof rack can be used to conveniently carry additional cargo, or bulky items, such as bicycles, which are better carried outside than inside. The roof rack has side rails attached to the roof. Consult your authorised repairer for details and regulations on driving with a loaded roof rack.

Ensure that the load is evenly distributed over the side or cross rails. The roof surface must not be loaded.

A loaded luggage carrier alters the vehicle's centre of gravity. Drive carefully when in crosswinds and do not drive at high speeds.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo as you are driving, check frequently to make sure your cargo are securely fastened.

WARNING

- If you try to carry something on top of your vehicle that is longer or wider than the roof rack, the wind can catch it as you drive along. This can cause you to lose control. What you are carrying could be violently torn off, and this could cause you or other drivers to have a collision, and of course damage your vehicle. Never carry something longer or wider than the roof rack on top of your vehicle.
- A loaded roof rack changes the vehicle's centre of gravity. Do not drive at high speeds. Take precautions when driving in crosswinds. Failure to follow this caution can result in vehicle damage and personal injury.
- The maximum load for the roof rack rails is 220 lbs (100 kg). Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading your vehicle.

ANTENNA

Your antenna is located in the rear side window and tailgate window. Be sure that the inside surface of the window is not scratched and that the lines on the window are not damaged. If the inside surface is damaged, it could interfere with radio reception.

A CAUTION

Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside of the window may damage radio reception. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not clear inside the window with sharp objects.

B DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE

RUNNING-IN	3-2 •	•	BRAKES	. 3-20
DRIVING PRECAUTIONS	3-2	•	ALL - WHEEL DRIVE SYSTEM	3-26
• FUEL	3-4 •	•	ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL SYSTEM	3-26
ADJUSTING THE MIRRORS	3-7 •	•	DESCENT CONTROL SYSTEM	3-28
ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL	3-10 •	•	TURBOCHARGER SYSTEM	3-30
SPEED SENSITIVE POWER STEERING SYSTEM.	3-11 •	•	DRIVING TIPS	3-31
IGNITION SWITCH	3-11 •	, '	TRAILER TOWING	3-37
STARTING THE ENGINE	3-13 •	•	ENGINE EXHAUST	3-45
DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE	3-15 •	•	ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION	3-46

RUNNING-IN

Use the following precautions for the first few hundred miles (kilometres) to improve the performance and economy of your vehicle and add to its long life:

- · Avoid full-throttle starts.
- Allow the engine to warm up before driving.
- Do not race the engine.
- Avoid hard stops except in emergencies.
 This will allow your brakes to bed in properly.
- Avoid quick starts, sudden accelerations, and prolonged high-speed driving in order to avoid damage to the engine and to conserve fuel.
- Avoid full-throttle acceleration in low gear.
- · Do not tow any other vehicle.

DRIVING PRECAUTIONS BEFORE ENTERING THE VEHICLE

WARNING

 Make sure all exterior light bulbs, lamps, signalling systems, and warning indicators are clean and working properly.

These precautions help to avoid accidents that could result in personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

- Be sure all windows, inside and outside rearview mirrors, light bulbs, and lamps are clean and working properly.
- · Check under the vehicle for leaks.
- Check the levels of engine oil and other fluids in the engine compartment.
- Visually check the tyres for damage or improper inflation pressures and for foreign objects imbedded in the tread.
- Take corrective actions as required.

BEFORE DRIVING

M WARNING

Loose objects on the instrument panel or rear window shelf can obstruct your vision.

 Remove any loose objects on the instrument panel or on the rear window shelf.

These objects can also be thrown around and strike passengers during hard braking or a collision, causing personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

- Be sure you understand your vehicle, its equipment and its safe operation.
- Adjust your seat to a comfortable position.
- · Adjust the inside and outside mirrors.
- Be sure all occupants of the vehicle have fastened their safety belts.
- Check the operation of the warning lights as the ignition key is turned ON.

- · Check all the gauges.
- Release the parking brake, making sure the parking brake status lamp goes out.

- Be sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts before starting to drive.
- Be sure all windows, rearview mirrors, light bulbs and lamps are clean and operational.

A CAUTION

Ensure that passengers or load should be evenly distributed in the front passenger seat, 2nd and 3rd row seats.

WHILE DRIVING

As the driver of your vehicle, you are responsible for the safety of yourself, your passengers and others sharing the road with you. To discharge that responsibility, you must keep your full attention on operating the vehicle. Most vehicular collisions are caused when a driver's concentration is either impaired or distracted. At all times, the driver's concentration should be upon the road, nearby vehicles and other objects.

One significant distraction in today's driving environment is the use of hand-held phones while driving. Studies have found that the use of hand-held phones while driving increases the risk of being involving in an accident. At least one scientific study found that use of any phone system— either hand-held or handsfree— increases the risk of a collision by 400%.

Using phones, two-way radios or other electronic devices such as computers, organisers, games, video, or GPS and other navigational aids similarly increases the risk of collision. We discourage your use of equipment while you are operating your vehicle.

Legislation has been enacted or is under consideration in some countries prohibiting the use of hand-held phones while operating a motor vehicle.

WARNING

Driving safely requires all of your concentration as well as the application of good judgement and common sense. Avoid or minimise distractions while operating your vehicle. Distractions you may encounter could include:

- responding to calls on your cell or car phone;
- initiating calls on your cell or car phone;
- making adjustments to your seat, steering wheel or mirrors;
- using other electronic devices:
- referring to maps or other written materials;

(Continued)

(Continued)

- removing or connecting your safety belt;
- searching for change approaching toll booths: or
- other activities that divert your attention from the task of safe vehicular operation.

Engaging in such activities will greatly increase the risk of a collision that may cause personal injury or death.

Anticipate the need for such activities and perform them before you start your trip when possible, or while your vehicle is safely at a stop.

FUEL

FUEL RECOMMENDATIONS

Use only unleaded fuel rated at RON95.

Fuel quality and additives contained in fuel have a significant effect on power output, driveability, and life of the engine.

Fuel with too low an octane number can cause engine knock.

A CAUTION

- Use of fuel with an octane number lower than RON95 may damage engine. (In some countries, you may be able to use unleaded fuel rated at RON91. For the details, consult your authorised repairer.)
- Use of leaded fuel will damage exhaust system and invalidate the warranty.

NOTE

To prevent accidental use of leaded fuel, the nozzles for leaded fuel are larger, and will not fit the fuel filler neck of your vehicle.

Do not use methanol

Fuels containing methanol should not be used in your vehicle.

This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system.

A CAUTION

Use of methanol may damage the fuel system. Such misuse is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Operation in foreign countries

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Confirm that suitable fuel is available.

FUEL FOR DIESEL ENGINE

Diesel engine must be operated only on commercially available diesel fuel meeting the specifications of DIN EN 590. Do not use marine diesel oils, heating oils or entirely or partially plant-based diesel fuels, such as rape seed oil or bio diesel, Aquazole and similar diesel-water emulsions.

The flow and filterability of diesel fuel are temperature-dependent.

Diesel fuels with improved low-temperature properties are therefore available on the market during the winter months. Make sure that you fill the tank with winter fuel before the start of the cold weather season.

A CAUTION

If you use inappropriate grade fuel or put incorrect fuel additives into the fuel tank, the engine and catalytic converter may seriously be damaged.

A CAUTION

Be sure to use the correct fuel (petrol or diesel) corresponding to your vehicle when refuelling.

If you fill petrol in your diesel engined vehicle, your vehicle can be seriously damaged.

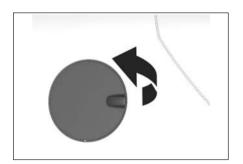
If you vehicle has diesel engine. you can confirm the correct fuel by taking a look at information on the fuel filler cap.

FILLING THE FUEL TANK

- 1. Stop the engine.
- Unlock the doors by pressing the door lock switch on the driver's door trim pad. See "DOOR LOCKS" in the index for more information. The fuel filler door can simply be opened by hand. The fuel filler door is located on the left rear side of the vehicle.

NOTE

If, in cold weather, the fuel filler door does not open, tap the door lightly. Then try to open it again.



3-6 DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE

- 3. Turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise slowly. If a hissing sound is heard, wait for it to stop before completely unscrewing the cap.
- 4. Remove the cap. The cap is tethered to the vehicle. Place the cap in its holder on the inside of the fuel filler door.

WARNING

Fuel vapour is highly flammable.

- Keep flames, sparks and other smoking materials away from petrol.
- Turn off your engine.

You can be seriously burnt and your vehicle damaged when petrol vapour catches fire.

- 5. After refuelling, replace the cap. Turn it clockwise until you hear several clicks.
- 6. Close the fuel filler door.



Avoid spilling petrol on the painted surfaces of your car.

 If you spill petrol on your vehicle, rinse the area with clean, cold water as soon as possible.

Petrol can damage the paint.



<u>Fuel filling from drums or portable</u> containers

WARNING

For safety reasons, fuel containers, pumps and hoses must be properly earthed. Static electricity build up can ignite the petrol vapour. You can be burnt and your vehicle damaged.

Always observe the following precautions:

- Use earthed pumps with integrally earthed hoses and containers when filling the fuel tank.
- Do not fill your container when it is inside your vehicle rather than on the ground.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Keep flames, sparks and smoking materials away from petrol.

ADJUSTING THE MIRRORS

POWER OUTSIDE REARVIEW MIRRORS

Adjust the outside rearview mirrors so you can see each side of your vehicle, as well as each side of the road behind you.

You may adjust the outside rearview mirrors up or down and left or right using the mirror switch located on the driver's side instrument panel, below the side vent outlet. The ignition switch must be ACC or ON to adjust the mirrors. Also, the mirrors will continue to be adjusted for up to 10 minutes or until a door is opened when the ignition key is in the LOCK position or out of the ignition.



- Select the mirror you want to adjust by moving the selector switch to "L" for LH mirror or to "R" for RH mirror.
- 2. Adjust the selected mirror up, down, left or right using the corresponding edges of the mirror adjusting pad.

The outside mirrors are convex and are labelled with a notice that reads as follows:

OBJECTS IN MIRROR ARE CLOSER THAN THEY APPEAR.

Use the outside mirror to get a wider view of the road behind your vehicle.

Use the inside mirror to determine the size and the distance of objects reflected in the side mirror.

Using only both (convex) mirrors can cause you to misjudge size and distance behind you.

 Always keep your mirrors properly adjusted, and use them while driving to increase your visibility of objects and other vehicles around you.

Failure to properly judge distances between your vehicle and other objects may result in a collision causing damage to your vehicle or other property, or injuries.

A CAUTION

Improper care of your mirrors can damage them.

- Do not scrape ice from the face of the mirror.
- If ice or other material restricts movement of the mirror, do not force the adjustment.
- Use a deicer spray or a hot air blower to remove the ice.

Damaged mirrors can restrict your vision, resulting in a possible collision.

WARNING

Do not drive while either outside rearview mirror is folded back.
 Doing so will cause reduced visibility, which could result in a collision.

MANUAL FOLDING MIRROR

For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

NOTE

Do not drive while either outside rearview mirror is folded back. Doing so will cause reduced visibility, which could result in a collision.

ELECTRIC FOLDING MIRROR

Press the electric folding mirror button to fold the outside rearview mirrors flat against the side of the vehicle. The ignition switch must be ACC or ON to fold the mirrors. Also, the mirrors will continue to be folded for up to 10 minutes or until a door is opened when the ignition key is in the LOCK position or out of the ignition.

To return the mirrors to their original positions, press the button again.



- Do not press the electric folding mirror button while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not drive while either outside rearview mirror is folded back.

Doing so will cause reduced visibility, which could result in a collision.

INSIDE REARVIEW MIRROR

The inside rearview mirror adjusts manually up, or down and left, or right.

Use the inside rearview mirror adjusting lever to modify the mirror for day / night vision.

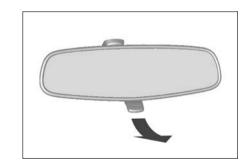
This reduces glare from headlights on vehicles behind you.

WARNING

Your view through the mirror may lose some clarity when it is adjusted for night vision.

 Take special care with using your inside rearview mirror when it is adjusted for night vision.

Failure to ensure a clear rear view while driving may result in a collision causing damage to your vehicle or other property, and/or personal injury.



ELECTRO-CHROMIC MIRROR

Your vehicle may be equipped with Electro-Chromic Mirror(ECM), which automatically reduces glare from vehicles behind you providing uniform light levels to your eyes.

To turn the ECM ON, press the button on the mirror cover. The indicator light will be illuminated. The ignition switch must be in the ON position.

To turn the ECM OFF, press the button again.

A CAUTION

There are two light sensors which detect ambient light level and glare from vehicles behind you.

• Do not cover the sensors or hang items on the EC mirror.

Doing so may limit the ECM operation and you may have no benefit from it.

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

The driver must maintain total control of the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving.

 Do not adjust the steering wheel position while the vehicle is moving.
 Adjusting the steering wheel while driving may result in loss of control of the vehicle.

The steering wheel should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary and the steering column lock is released.

You may adjust the steering wheel using the lever located on the left side of the steering column.

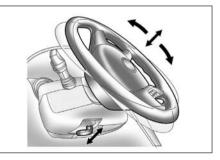


To tilt the wheel, hold the steering wheel and push the lever down. Then, move the steering wheel to a comfortable position and pull the lever up firmly to lock the column in place.

A CAUTION

• Do not drive with steering wheel in the highest position.

Use this position only to make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle.



SPEED SENSITIVE POWER STEERING SYSTEM

The speed sensitive power steering(SSPS) system varies the driver effort required to steer as the vehicle speed changes.

At low speeds, the system provides maximum power assistance for easy turning and parking manoeuvres. At higher speeds, the steering power is reduced to provide the driver with firmer steering and directional stability.

The SSPS system accomplishes this by reducing the amount of the power steering fluid flow from the power steering pump to the power steering gear as the vehicle speed increases. When the vehicle is stationary, the SSPS system provides maximum fluid flow to the steering gear. As the vehicle speed increases, the fluid flow to the steering gear is decreased.

If the system fails, the steering effort will increase at lower speeds and SSPS warning lamp will illuminate.

See "SSPS WARNING LAMP" in the index.

IGNITION SWITCH

The ignition switch, located on the right side of the steering column, has the following positions: LOCK, ACC, ON and START.

LOCK

To lock the steering wheel, remove the key and rotate the steering wheel until it locks.

For easier key operation when unlocking the steering wheel, move the steering wheel gently from right to left and turn the key to the ACC position.



ACC

The engine can be turned off without locking the steering wheel by turning the key to the ACC position. To turn the key from ACC to LOCK position, push in the key slightly and turn to LOCK.

Some electrical accessories, such as the radio, cigar lighter, electric window, and sunroof, can be operated in the ACC position.

A CAUTION

• Do not leave the key in the ACC for extended periods.

This will discharge the battery.

ON

Activates the ignition system and the electrical accessories.

A CAUTION

 Do not leave the key in the ON for extended periods while the engine is not running.

This will discharge the battery.

START

Starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key, and it will automatically return to ON.

Make sure that the engine is not running before turning the key to START.

WARNING

Do not turn the key to OFF while driving.

Driver could lose control of vehicle and brake power assistance would be cancelled, causing vehicle damage, personal injury or possibly death.

WARNING

• Do not reach for the key through the steering wheel.

Steering wheel can suddenly turn causing driver to lose control of vehicle and causing injury to fingers, hands or arms.

IMMOBILISER SYSTEM

The immobiliser system provides an additional theft deterrent to the vehicle in which it is installed and prevents it from being started by unauthorised persons.

The valid key for a vehicle equipped with an immobiliser system is a mechanical ignition key with integrated transponder, which is electronically coded. The transponder is placed invisibly in the ignition key.

Only valid ignition keys can be used to start the engine. Invalid keys may only open the doors. The immobiliser system isolates the power supply to the ignition system, fuel pump and fuel injectors.

The engine is automatically immobilised after the key is turned to LOCK and has been removed from the ignition switch.

See "KEYS" in the index.

If the immobiliser system does not recognise the electronic code when you turn the ignition key to START, the engine will not start. If there is a malfunction in the immobiliser system, the immobiliser system warning lamp will illuminate. If this occurs, consult a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

STARTING THE ENGINE BEFORE STARTING THE ENGINE

- Make sure the area around vehicle is clear.
- Make sure all windows and lights are clear.
- Inspect tyres for condition, correct inflation pressure and foreign objects.
- Adjust seat positions and head restraints.
- · Adjust inside and outside mirrors.
- Fasten safety belt and ask all passengers to do the same.
- Check the operation of warning lights and indicators in the instrument panel when the key is turned to ON position.
- Periodically, such as when refuelling, check maintenance items noted in this manual.

A CAUTION

- Do not operate starter motor for more than 15 seconds at a time.
- If the engine does not start, wait 10 seconds before trying again.

This will prevent starter motor damage.

NOTE

If the engine becomes flooded during starting, fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it in that position as you start the engine.

Starting the diesel engine

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the "ON" position without depressing the accelerator pedal. The glow plug indicator (⑦) will come on and go out when the glow plugs are sufficiently heated for cold engine starting. As soon as the glow plug indicator goes out, start the engine.

MANUAL TRANSAXLE

- 1. Make sure the driver and passengers are wearing their safety belts properly.
- 2. Apply parking brake if it is not engaged.
- 3. Make sure the seats, head restraints, and mirrors are in their proper positions and adjust them if it is required.
- 4. Make sure the gearshift lever is in NEU-TRAL position and press the clutch pedal all the way down.
- 5. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition to START and release it when the engine starts. If the engine starts momentarily but fails to run, wait for 10 seconds, then try again.
- 6. Allow the engine to idle at least 30 seconds.
- 7. Release the parking brake.
- Drive at a moderate speed for a short distance, especially in cold weather until normal engine operating temperature is reached.

AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE

- 1. Make sure the driver and passengers are wearing their safety belts properly.
- 2. Apply the parking brake if it is not engaged.
- 3. Make sure the seats, head restraints, and mirrors are in their correct positions and adjust them if it is required.
- 4. Make sure the selector lever is in park (P) position.

NOTE

The engine can only be started when the selector lever is in "P" or "N".

- 5. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START and release it when the engine starts. If the engine starts momentarily but fails to run, wait for 10 seconds, then try again.
- 6. Allow engine to idle at least 30 seconds.
- 7. Release the parking brake.
- Drive at a moderate speed for a short distance, especially in cold weather until normal engine operating temperature is reached.

▲ WARNING

Although the engine can be started when the selector lever is in "N" position, use it only when normal starting is impossible.

See "AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE EMER-GENCY SHIFTING PROCEDURE" in the index for more information.

DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE MANUAL TRANSAXLE

To change gears, fully depress the clutch pedal, move the gearshift lever into gear, and slowly release the clutch.

To shift into reverse, press the button on the back of the shift knob while moving the shift lever into the reverse position.



A CAUTION

 Before shifting between a forward and reverse, bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

Shifting between forward and reverse gear while the vehicle is moving can damage the transaxle.

A CAUTION

• Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal while driving.

This will cause accelerated wear of the clutch components.

AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE

The automatic transaxle in your vehicle is an electronically controlled six-speed transaxle.

Selector lever positions

• P (PARK):

Locks the front wheels. Select P only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied.

• R (REVERSE):

Select R only when the vehicle is stationary.

• N (NEUTRAL):

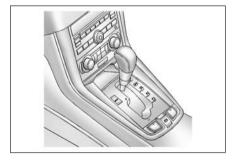
Neutral gear position.

• D (DRIVE):

This drive position is for all normal driving conditions. Allows the transaxle to shift into all five forward gears.

A CAUTION

- Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake.
- Turn off the engine, apply the parking brake, and remove the ignition key when leaving the vehicle.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.



Selector lever with manual mode

Shifting between gear positions is as follows:

: Depress the brake pedal and push release button to shift.

Shifts that require you to push the release button are indicated by black arrows.

: Push the release button to shift.

White arrows indicate shifts that do not require you to push the release button.

: Shift freely.

Whether your vehicle is stationary or in motion, manual mode is selected by pulling the selector lever from the "D" position to the left into the manual gate. To return to "D" range operation, push the selector lever back to the right into the main gate.

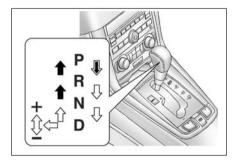
In manual mode, moving the selector lever backwards and forwards can make rapid gearshifts simple. In contrast to a manual transaxle, the manual mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

UP (+): Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

DOWN (-): Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

NOTE

- In manual mode, downward shifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.
- To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the selector lever is operated.
- Before driving away from a stop on a slippery road, push the selector lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving away on a slippery road. Pull the selector lever to the - (down) to shift back to 1st gear.



NOTE

In manual mode, only the five forward gears can be selected.

To reverse or park the vehicle, move the selector lever to the "R" or "P" position as required.

A CAUTION

- In manual mode, the driver must execute upward shifts in accordance with prevailing road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.
- Since sudden engine braking and/or rapid acceleration can cause a loss of traction, however, downshifts must be made carefully in accordance with the vehicle's speed.

Starting the vehicle

1. After warming up the engine, continue to press the brake pedal while shifting the selector lever to either the R or D position.

A CAUTION

 Do not shift between D (Drive) and R (Reverse) or P (Park) while the vehicle is moving.

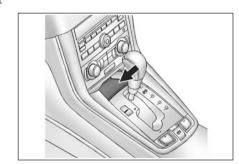
This will cause damage to your transaxle and personal injury.

- 2. Release the parking brake and the brake pedal.
- 3. Slowly press the accelerator pedal to set the vehicle in motion.

Shifting out of park (P)

Your vehicle has a Brake-Transaxle Shift Interlock (BTSI) system. Before shifting from park (P), the ignition must be ON and you must depress the brake pedal all the way down. If you cannot shift out of P with the ignition ON and the brake pedal depressed:

- 1. Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
- 2. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- 3. Remove the rubber mat.



- 4. Insert and press the ignition key into slot.
- 5. Shift to neutral (N).
- 6. Remove the key from the slot.
- 7. Start the engine and shift into the gear you want.
- 8. Reinstall the rubber mat.
- 9. Have your vehicle repaired as soon as possible.

To help prevent damage to the transaxle, observe the following precautions:

- Do not press the accelerator pedal while shifting from P or N to R or D.
 To do so may not only damage the transaxle, but could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.
- Use D as much as possible.
- Never shift to P or R while the vehicle is in motion.
- When stopping the vehicle on an uphill grade, do not hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator pedal. Use the foot brake.

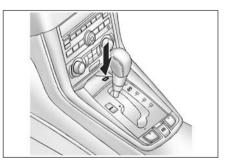
(Continued)



(Continued)

• Press the brake pedal when shifting from P or N to R or a forward gear.

Otherwise transaxle could be damaged or vehicle could move unexpectedly, causing driver to lose control of the vehicle, resulting in personal injury or damage to the vehicle or other property.



Fuel Economy Mode

The vehicle may have a fuel economy mode. When engaged, fuel economy mode can improve the vehicle's fuel economy.

Pressing the eco button by the shift lever will engage fuel economy mode. When activated, the eco light in the instrument cluster will come on.

See "FUEL ECONOMY LAMP" in the index. Pressing the button a second time will turn fuel economy mode off.

When fuel economy mode is on:

- The transmission will up shift sooner, and downshift later.
- The torque converter will lock- up sooner, and stay on longer.
- The gas pedal will be less sensitive.
- The vehicle's computers will more aggressively shut off fuel to the engine under deceleration. Do not use fuel economy mode while towing.

BRAKES

The braking system is designed for braking performance under a wide range of driving conditions.

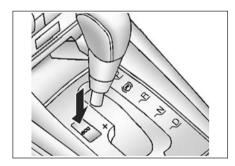
Your vehicle is equipped with front and rear disc brakes and a dual circuit braking system.

If one brake circuit should fail, the vehicle can still be stopped with the remaining circuit, however, stopping distance will be increased and more brake pedal pressure will be required.

WARNING

If one of the circuits fail, the brake pedal must be pressed with greater pedal pressure and the braking distance is increased.

 Have the brake system checked and repaired by a workshop immediately.
We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.



If the brake pedal can be pressed further than normal, the brakes may be in need of repair.

 Consult a workshop immediately. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

A CAUTION

• Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal.

Doing so will accelerate wear of the brake components. The brakes may also become overheated, resulting in longer braking distance and an unsafe condition.

Center high-mounted stop lamp (or with brake lamps) blinks several times to alert drivers coming behind your vehicle on the following condition;

- Although brakes are operated, a vehilcle runs more than a certain speed.
- When ABS is working at that time.

WET BRAKES

Driving through water or washing your car can get the brake components wet.

To restore normal braking:

- 1. Check behind you for other vehicles.
- 2. Keep a safe forward speed with plenty of space to your rear and sides.
- 3. Gently apply brakes until normal performance is restored.

OVERHEATED BRAKES

Braking excessively when going down a long, steep hill can temporarily overheat the brakes. Shift to a lower gear when going down hills. Do not continuously apply the brakes.

See "ENGINE BRAKING" later in this section or in the index.

After driving through deep water, washing the vehicle, or using the brakes excessively when going down a steep hill, the brakes can temporarily lose their stopping power. This may be due to wet brake components or overheating.

If your brakes temporarily lose their stopping power because of overheating:

 Shift to a lower gear when going down hills. Do not continuously apply the brakes. See "ENGINE BRAK-ING" in the index.

If your brakes temporarily lose their power because of wet brake components, the following procedure will help restore their normal performance:

- 1. Check behind you for other vehicles.
- 2. Keep a safe forward speed with plenty of space to your rear and sides.
- 3. Gently apply the brakes until normal performance is restored.

WARNING

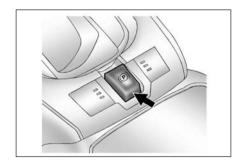
 When brake noise is heard, do not continue to drive your vehicle.

This may indicate the brake pads need to be repaired or replaced. Driving with worn brake pads could result in a collision and personal injury.

PARKING BRAKE

The vehicle has an Electric Parking Brake (EPB). The switch for the EPB is in the center console. The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is OFF. To prevent draining the battery, avoid repeated cycles of the EPB system when the engine is not running.

The system has a parking brake status light and a parking brake warning light. See "ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE LAMP" in the index. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released. Before leaving the vehicle, check the parking brake status lamp to insure the parking brake is applied.



EPB Apply

The EPB can be applied any time the vehicle is stopped. The EPB is applied by momentarily lifting up on the EPB switch. Once fully applied, the parking brake status light will be on. While the brake is being applied, the status lamp will flash until full apply is reached. If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, you need to have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the parking brake status light is flashing. Consult a workshop. We recommend your Chevrolet authorised repairer. See "ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE LAMP" in the index for more information.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is in motion, a chime will sound. The vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is held in the up position. Releasing the EPB switch during the deceleration will release the parking brake. If the switch is held in the up position until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

If the parking brake status light flashes continuously, the EPB is only partially applied or released, or there is a problem with the EPB. If this light flashes continuously, release the EPB, and attempt to apply it again. If this light continues to flash, do not drive the vehicle. Consult a workshop. We recommend your Chevrolet authorised repairer. If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To apply the EPB when this light is on, lift up on the EPB switch and hold it in the up position. Full application of the parking brake by the EPB system may take a longer period of time than normal when this light is on.

Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light remains on. If the parking brake warning light is on, consult a workshop. We recommend your Chevrolet authorised repairer.

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

EPB Release

To release the EPB, place the ignition in the ON/RUN position, apply and hold the brake pedal, and push down momentarily on the EPB switch. If you attempt to release the EPB without the brake pedal applied, a chime will sound and the press brake pedal light will appear.

The EPB is released when the parking brake status light is off.

If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To release the EPB when this light is on, push down on the EPB switch and hold it in the down position.

EPB release may take a longer period of time than normal when this light is on. Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light is off. If the light is on, consult a workshop. We recommend your Chevrolet authorised repairer.

NOTE

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

WARNING

If the parking brake is not set properly, the vehicle may move suddenly. See a workshop if an adjustment is required. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

A CAUTION

Do not drive with the parking brake on.
 This can cause your rear parking brakes to overheat or wear out prematurely.
 You may have to replace them, and you could damage other parts of your vehicle.

A CAUTION

• Do not park or operate your vehicle over combustible materials.

They could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite.

Winter parking tip

In cold weather conditions, the parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen if the brakes are wet.

If there is a risk that parking brake may freeze after driving through water deep enough to wet brake components or having the vehicle washed:

- Apply the parking brake only temporarily while you put the gear selector lever in "P" (for automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (for manual transaxle).
- 2. Block the rear wheels with wedge blocks.
- 3. Then release the parking brake.

WARNING

 Do not use parking brake while the vehicle is in motion, or as a substitute for the brake pedal.

Doing so may cause you to lose control of the vehicle, resulting in a collision, property damage and personal injury.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system is an advanced electronic braking system that will help prevent skidding and loss of control of your vehicle. The system allows you to steer around obstacles while braking hard, and provides maximum stopping ability on slippery pavement

When the ignition is turned on, the "ABS" warning lamp will glow for about 3 seconds. If the light does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, there is something wrong with the ABS. Consult a workshop immediately. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer. See "ABS WARNING LAMP" in the index.

When you start your engine, or when you begin to drive away, your ABS will check itself. You may hear a clicking noise while this test is going on, and you may even notice that your brake pedal moves or pulses a little. This is normal.

If your vehicle is equipped with ESC, you may also hear another noise when pressing the brake pedal again within about 7 seconds after ABS operation. This is a noise to complete preparation for ESC operation and normal too.

ABS works by sensing the speed of each wheel during braking. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will work the brakes separately at each front wheel and at the rear wheels. A slight vibration in the brake pedal, accompanied by some noise, usually takes place while the ABS is working.

NOTE

ABS does not change the time you need to apply the brakes, and it does not always decrease stopping distances.

 Always leave enough room to stop, even though you have ABS.

Braking with ABS

Regardless of the road conditions, do not pump the brakes. Firmly press and hold the pedal and let the ABS work for you.

WARNING

If the brake system and the ABS warning lamp come on at the same time, there is a failure in the brake system.

 Have the system checked by a workshop immediately. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE (AWD) SYSTEM

If your vehicle has active on demand all-wheel drive (AWD), the AWD system operates automatically without any action required by the driver. If the front drive wheels begin to slip, the rear wheels will automatically begin to drive the vehicle as required. There may be a slight engagement noise during hard use but this is normal.

The AWD warning lamp blinks when AWD system is temporarily disabled. If the lamp blinks briefly, and then goes out, this is normal and does not indicate a system fault. However if the lamp blinks continuously, you should consult a workshop to repair the problem as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

The lamp comes on to indicate that there is a malfunction in the AWD system. If it happens, your vehicle should be serviced by a workshop. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC) SYSTEM

A CAUTION

If you choose to install winter tyres on your vehicle, be sure to only use winter tyres that are recommended by by a workshop. We recommend your authorized Chevrolet repairer.

Using the wrong winter tyres may adversely affect Stability System performance.

See your authorised Chevrolet repairer for details regarding winter tyre availability and proper tyre selection.

The ESC system is an electronic vehicle stability control system and driving safety supplementary system that helps to avoid dangerous situations by applying brakes on the wheels or the engine torque to compensate vehicle stability when it is extremely unstable under conditions such as sharp cornering or quick lane change. The ESC function automatically works when your vehicle is in a very unstable condition. The ESC system does not work under normal driving conditions.

When the ignition is switched ON, the ESC active & warning lamp and ESC off indicator come on and go off after about 4 seconds.

The ESC active & warning lamp blinks while ESC is operating and illuminates to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system. If this condition occurs, consult a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer. See the "ESC OFF INDICATOR", and "ESC ACTIVE & WARNING LAMP" in the index.

A CAUTION

If the ESC active & warning lamp comes on, the ESC system is defective. Make sure to consult a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

HYDRAULIC BRAKE ASSIST (HBA) FUNCTION

When the ESC system recognises any emergency situations requiring hard braking, it automatically delivers an extra high braking pressure to the wheels.

ACTIVE ROLLOVER PROTECTION (ARP) FUNCTION

This function is a part of the ESC system. When your vehicle moves in an extremely unstable manner, this function helps the vehicle maintain normal stability.

TRACTION CONTROL SYSTEM (TCS) FUNCTION

TCS prevents the driving wheels from spinning, irrespective of the road condition and tyre grip. As soon as at least one driving wheel starts to spin, the engine output is reduced and the spinning wheel is braked. This improves the vehicle's directional control and driving power, particularly on snow and ice as well as on wet or slippery roads.

TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA) FUNCTION

Snaking road trains are very difficult to handle. This function detects snaking and then reduces the trains velocity until the oscillation stops. The deceleration is obtained by reducing the engine torque and increasing the pressure in all wheel brakes.

ESC OFF BUTTON

ESC can be deactivated by pressing the ESC OFF button on the centre of the instrument panel.

If you push the ESC OFF button again when the ESC function is deactivated (ESC off indicator is turned on), the system will be resumed and the ESC off indicator on the instrument panel goes out by resuming the ESC system.

A CAUTION

- When the ESC system activates to correct the vehicle stability, reduce the speed and pay extra attention to the road.
- The ESC system is only a supplementary device for the vehicle. When the vehicle exceeds its physical limits, it cannot be controlled. Do not rely on the system. Keep driving safely.
- When the ESC is applied, you may hear some noise or feel a vibration from the brake pedal or other relevant systems.
 They are caused by pressure changes in the relevant systems.

DESCENT CONTROL SYSTEM (DCS)

When travelling down steep gradients, this function allows you to travel at a low speed without any depression of the brake pedal and makes you concentrate on steering. This convenient function is for only driving down steep gradients.

To activate DCS, press the DCS button on the centre of the instrument panel. When the button is pressed, DCS is ready for use. The green DCS active indicator comes on. While DCS is operating, DCS active indicator will blink.





To deactivate DCS, press the DCS button again. DCS active indicator will go off.

The amber DCS not ready & warning lamp blinks to indicate that DCS is not ready for conditions to operate and comes on to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system

See "DCS ACTIVE AND NOT READY/WARNING LAMP" in the index for more information.

A CAUTION

If the amber DCS not ready and warning lamp comes on, the DCS is malfunctioning. Make sure to consult a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

DCS OPERATIONAL CONDITIONS

- 1. The DCS button should be pressed (The green DCS active indicator comes on).
- 2. A certain steep gradient.
- 3. Driving below about 50 km/h (31.1 mph). (DCS is not operated when the vehicle speed is over 50 km/h (31.1 mph) in spite of pressing DCS button. DCS operates again when the vehicle speed decreases below 30 km/h (18.6 mph) after it is over 50 km/h (31.1 mph))
- 4. The accelerator or brake pedal is not depressed.

(DCS is not operated only when the accelerator or brake pedal is applied.)

A CAUTION

- DCS is designed for driving on off-road steep gradients.
- Unnecessary usage of DCS can cause malfunctions in the brake system or ESC. Do not use DCS when driving on normal roads.
- It is normal to have strong vibrations and noise from the brake system when DCS is applied.

TURBOCHARGER SYSTEM (Diesel only)

Turbochargers help the engine operate more smoothly and with greater efficiency.

The turbocharger consists of two turbo elements, a turbine and a compressor, both of which are driven from the main centre shaft. The turbine uses the energy of the exhaust gas to drive the compressor. The compressor, in turn, draws in fresh air which it supplies to the cylinders in the form of compressed air.

The intercooler cools down the compressed air temperature to increase the engine power by increasing the air density.

The turbocharger elements rotate very fast. If the oil supply to running parts stops, the turbocharger system may be seriously damaged. The owner should be encouraged to observe the following precautions to ensure maximum turbocharger service life.

- After starting the engine, let it run for about1 to 2 minutes with idle speed (Avoid acceleration or driving off the vehicle).
- Do not stop the engine immediately after coming back from the high load driving (such as high speed driving or driving down a long slope). Let the engine run for about 1to 2 minutes at idle speed to cool it down.
- After changing the engine oil and oil filter, start the engine and let it run for about 1 to 2 minutes with idle speed (Avoid acceleration or driving off the vehicle).
- Operate the engine above idle only after normal engine oil pressure has been established. Forcing the turbocharger to operate before the bearings are adequately lubricated creates unnecessary friction.
- Use only the specified engine oil and observe inspection and replacement intervals.

 At low ambient temperature, or when the vehicle has not been used for a long period, normal engine oil pressure and flow is affected. Under these conditions the engine should be started and allowed to idle for a few minutes before operating at higher rpm.

DRIVING TIPS

KICK DOWN (AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE)

For faster acceleration, press the accelerator pedal all the way down and hold it. The transaxle will shift to a lower gear and you will have more power. When the desired speed is reached, let up on the accelerator and the transaxle will shift up.

ENGINE BRAKING

To help use the braking effect of engine compression when driving on a long downhill:

• For automatic transaxle, select the drive range "2".

Engine braking is the most effective in drive range "2". If drive range "2" is selected at too high speed, the transaxle remains in current gear until the vehicle slows down.

• For manual transaxle, downshift to a lower gear in a sequential order.

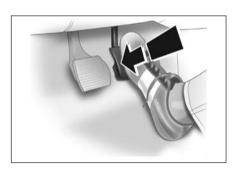
WARNING

 Do not downshift your manual transaxle by two or more gear positions at a time.

This prevents damage to your transaxle or loss of control and personal injuries.

NOTE

Use of engine compression during long mountainous descents may prolong the life of your brakes.



STOPPING THE VEHICLE

For automatic transaxle, the selector lever can be left in the chosen drive range with the engine running. When stopping on hills, engage the parking brake or press the brake pedal. Do not hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator.

Switch the engine off if stopping for lengthy periods of time, as in traffic jams or at rail-road crossings.

When you park, place the selector lever in P(A/T) or neutral(M/T), apply the parking brake, and remove the key from the ignition switch.

PARKING THE VEHICLE

Hold the brake pedal down and firmly apply the parking brake.

For vehicles with a manual transaxle:

- Parking on level ground, place the gearshift lever in neutral.
- 2. On a downhill gradient, place the gearshift lever in reverse.
- 3. On an uphill gradient, place the gearshift lever in first gear.

For vehicles with an automatic transaxle:

- 1. Move the selector lever to P.
- 2. Turn the ignition key to LOCK and remove the key.

See "PARKING BRAKE" in the index.

WARNING

To prevent your parked vehicle from moving accidentally, do not leave the front wheels in a straight ahead position when parking on a hill.

- Turn the wheels away from the road and apply the parking brake if parking facing downhill.
- Turn the wheels toward the road and apply the parking brake if parking facing uphill.

PARKING ASSISTANCE SYSTEM

The parking assistance system assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by alarming if any object is sensed behind the vehicle.

This system can automatically be turned on whenever the ignition switch is ON and the automatic transaxle's selector lever is in "R".

This system is deactivated when the vehicle's speed is greater than approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph).

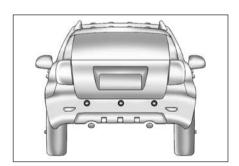
If the alarm sound happens when shifting the gear to "R" position, this indicates normal condition.

At this time, you can figure out the distance between your vehicle and obstacles with the alarming tone.

A CAUTION

If the following happens, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the parking assistance system. Consult a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

- The parking assistance system warning lamp comes on while driving.
- The alarm sounds for 3 times continuosly when there are no obstacles around the rear bumper.



3-34 DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE

Warning range	Tone ON	Tone OFF
0 ~ 40 cm	Continuous	-
41 ~ 80 cm	40 ms	280 ms
81 ~120 cm	40 ms	480 ms

A CAUTION

If the following happens, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the parking assistance system. Consult a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

- The parking assistance system warning lamp comes on while driving.
- The alarm sounds for 3 times continuosly when there are no obstacles around the rear bumper.

A CAUTION

- Parking assistance system should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the view.
- The audible warning signal can be different depending on the objects.
- The audible warning signal might not activate in case the sensor is frozen or stained with dirt or mud.
- There is a chance of malfunction of the parking assistance system when driving on uneven surfaces such as woods, gravel road, jagged road, or gradient.
- Do not push, or scratch the surface of the sensor. This will likely damage the covering.
- The parking assistance system might not recognise sharp objects, thick winter clothes or sponges which absorb the frequency.

A CAUTION

- When receiving other ultrasonic signals (metal sound or air braking noises from heavy commercial vehicles), the parking assistance system may not work properly.
- Clean dirty sensors with a soft sponge and clean water.
- You should continue to utilise the mirrors or turning your head. Normal precautions when reversing should be maintained.
- Do not press or shock the sensors by hitting or directing a high pressure water gun directly at them while washing, or the sensors will be damaged.
- In the car park, the upper portion of the vehicle can be hit before the sensor operation, so check with outside rearview mirrors or by turning your head during parking.

SUGGESTIONS FOR MORE ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Fuel economy is dependent largely on your style of driving.

How you drive, where you drive and when you drive affect how many miles (kilometres) you can get from a gallon (litres) of fuel.

To obtain maximum fuel economy:

- Accelerate slowly
- · Avoid unnecessary idling.
- · Keep the engine properly tuned.
- Do not race the engine.
- Use the air conditioning only when necessary.
- Slow down when driving on rough roads.
- Keep the tyres inflated to the recommended pressure.
- Maintain a safe distance from other vehicles to avoid a collision in case of sudden stops. This will also reduce wear on the brake pads and linings.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight.

- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Adhere to the vehicle maintenance schedule in the service guide and specifications in this manual.

HAZARDOUS DRIVING

When hazardous driving is encountered due to water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar conditions:

- Slow down your vehicle and drive cautiously allowing extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden manoeuvres when braking, steering or accelerating.
- When braking, press the brake pedal with a light, up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped, unless equipped with ABS.
 For vehicles equipped with ABS, press firmly on the brake pedal and steer around any hazard.
- If stuck in snow, mud or sand, use second gear to avoid spinning the front wheels.
- Use sand, tyre chains, or other non-slip materials under the front wheels to provide traction when stuck in ice, snow, or mud. See "ROCKING YOUR VEHICLE" in the index for more information.

AQUAPLANING

If your vehicle aquaplanes on a wet road, you cannot control your vehicle because there is little or no traction between the road and your tyres.

Aquaplaning may occur depending on the road conditions, tread and inflation of your tyres and the speed of your vehicle. It is very dangerous.

The best way to prevent aquaplaning is to lower the speed of your vehicle and be cautious whenever you feel the road is wet enough.

DRIVING THROUGH DEEP WATER

When you are about to drive through deep water, you must check the puddle or standing water is not too deep. If you drive too quickly through deep water, water can enter your engine through the air intake causing severe damage.

A CAUTION

Before attempting to drive through deep water, always observe the following precautions:

- Do not drive through water if the depth is slightly lower than the underbody of your vehicle.
- Drive as slow as you can in high RPM with the lowest gear position.

TRAILER TOWING

A CAUTION

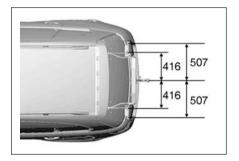
If you do not use the correct equipment and drive properly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section. Ask your authorised Chevrolet repairer for advice and information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.

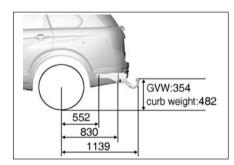
Your safety and satisfaction depend upon proper use of correct equipment. Also, you should avoid overloading and other abusive use.

The maximum loaded trailer weight you can pull with your vehicle depends on your intended use and what special equipment has been installed. Before attempting any towing, ensure that the correct equipment is fitted to your vehicle.

Your authorised Chevrolet repairer will help supply and install towing equipment to suit your requirements.

GEOMETRIC LOCATION OF THE COUPLING BALL AND THE FIXING POINTS OF THE COUPLING DEVICE (Unit: mm)



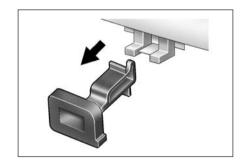


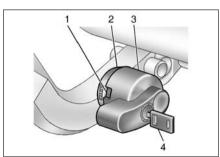
TOWING EQUIPMENT WITH REMOVABLE HITCH

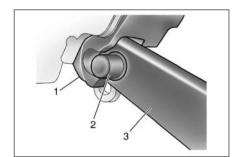
Installing the Hitch

- 1. Remove the hitch cover and store it a safe place.
- 2. Make sure the hitch is ready to be installed.
- Insert the hitch locking key (4) into the hitch lock (3).

 3. Insert the hitch (3) upward into the receiver (1) until the pins (2) on the hitch are in the
- Rotate the key down to the unlock position. The indicator on the hitch should be red (1).
- There is a gap between the knob and the hitch (2).
- retainer of the hitch receiver.







4. Push forward and down on the hitch (3) 5. Rotate the locking key up to the lock the until the hitch is engaged, and latches into place.

The indicator on the hitch will turn green (2) and the pins on the hitch (4) will be seated in the retainer of the receiver (1).

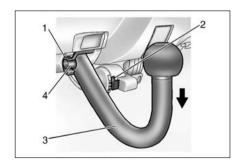
hitch into place and remove the hitch locking key.

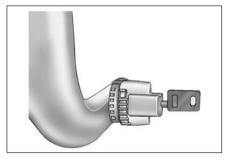
Check that the hitch is correctly installed:

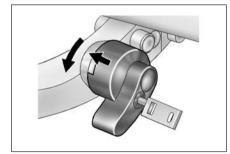
- The indicator on the hitch is green
- There is no gap between the pins on the hitch and the retainer on the receiver.
- The hitch is seated firmly in the receiver.
- The key is locked in the up position.
- Key is removed from the hitch.

Removing the Hitch

- 1. Insert the hitch locking key into the hitch lock.
- 2. Turn the key down to the unlock position.
- 3. Push in on the locking lever the hitch.
- 4. Rotate the lever forward 1/4 turn.







3-40 DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE

- 5. Lift up and pull outward to remove the hitch from the receiver.
- 6. Insert the hitch cover into the receiver housing.

A CAUTION

- Hitch must be seated firmly in coupling housing.
- Hitch must be locked and key must be removed.
- Towing a caravan/trailer is only permitted with a properly attached hitch. If the hitch cannot be properly attached, consult a workshop. We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

TRAILER LOADING

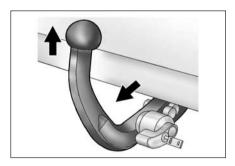
To load your trailer properly, you must know how to measure gross trailer weight and trailer vertical weight. Gross trailer weight is the weight of the trailer plus all cargo in it. You can measure gross trailer weight by putting the fully loaded trailer on a vehicle scale.

Trailer vertical weight is the downward force exerted on the hitch by the trailer coupler, with the trailer fully loaded and the coupler at its normal towing height. This weight can be measured using bathroom scales.

The weight of your loaded trailer (gross trailer weight) should never exceed the specified values.

The permissible trailer loads are valid for gradients up to 12%.

When the trailer has been coupled, the permissible rear axle load for the fully loaded towing vehicle (including occupants) must not be exceeded.



WARNING

Total gross vehicle weight with trailer must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) of the vehicle.

The total gross vehicle weight is the weight of the vehicle, driver, passengers, luggage or cargo, plus the weight of the hitch and the trailer vertical weight.

Maximum Load Limits

(unit: kg)

		2.4D	3.0D	Diesel
M/T	with Brake	1,500	-	2,000
	without Brake	750	-	750
A/T	with Brake	1,500	1,700	1,700
	without Brake	750	750	750

WARNING

The given trailer weights are applicable for altitudes up to 1,000 m above sea level.

In higher elevations the engine output may drop so that it may not be possible for the permissible trailer loads to be fully utilised in mountainous territory.

 Above 1,000 m in altitude, maximum permissible trailer loads should be reduced by 10% for every further 1,000 m in altitudes.

A CAUTION

When towing a trailer, the 3rd row seats should not be occupied by passengers.

WARNING

Incorrect loading and crosswinds, large trucks passing or rough roads can cause swaying or trailer separation.

- Adjust vertical load by distribution of load in trailer.
- Check by weighing loaded trailer and vertical load separately.
- Check the relevant country or territory registration authorities for the legal maximum towing weight capacities.

TRAILER BRAKES

If the caravan/trailer brakes are used, you should follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer. Never modify the brake system of your vehicle.

TRAILER LIGHTS

Make sure your trailer is equipped with lights which meet country and local requirements. Always check for the correct operation all of trailer lights before you start to tow.

TYRES

When towing trailers, be sure your tyres are correctly inflated to the inflation pressure shown in the section 8.

SAFETY CHAINS

Always attach safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the nose of the trailer so that the nose will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack to permit full turning. Never allow safety chains to drag on the road.

BRAKE FLUID

Change the brake fluid every 1 year under the following conditions.

- Towing a trailer frequently.
- Driving in hilly or mountainous terrain.

AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE FLUID

The transaxle fluid change is not required. Also, routine inspection of the fluid is not required. Transaxle fluid inspection is only required if there is a symptom indicating a concern with the fluid.

TOWING TIPS

When towing a trailer, your vehicle will handle differently than under normal driving conditions.

For safety, observe the following precautions:

- Practice turning, stopping, and reversing before you begin towing in traffic. Do not tow in traffic until you are confident that you can handle the vehicle and trailer safely.
- Before driving, make sure that the lighting system of the trailer works properly.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) or legal maximum speeds, whichever is lower.

- When driving uphill do not drive faster than 30 km/h (19 mph) in first gear or 50 km/h (31 mph) in second gear.
- Make sure that you have enough room when cornering and avoid sudden manoeuvres.
- Avoid abrupt starts, acceleration or stops.
- Avoid sharp turns or lane changes.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed.
- Always have someone guide you when reversing.
- Allow adequate stopping distance.
 Stopping distance is increased when you tow a trailer.
- Slow down and shift down into a lower gear before descending steep or long downhill gradients.
- Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or too frequently, which will cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced brake efficiency.
- Always block the wheels on both vehicle and trailer when parking. Apply the handbrake firmly.

- Parking on a steep slope is not recommended.
- You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill.
- If something goes wrong, such as the trailer hitch becoming disengaged, people can be injured and both the vehicle and trailer can be damaged.
- If someone removing the blocks stands directly behind the trailer, they could be injured.
 If your brakes or the hitch slipped, the trailer could roll backwards.
 - Make sure anyone removing blocks from your wheels stands to one side.
- Take note of trailer manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING

If you have a tailgate window open and you pull a trailer with your vehicle, carbon monoxide (CO) could come into your vehicle. You cannot see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness or death.

 Do not drive with tailgate window open. If you must drive this way, close all other windows, place in 'FRESH AIR MODE', open the centre/ side vents, and run blower at high speed. (See "VENTILATION" in the index)

DRIVING ON GRADIENTS

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep down gradient. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer work efficiently.

On a long uphill gradient, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.

PARKING ON HILLS

You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. If something goes wrong, your rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.

But if you ever have to park your rig on a hill, here's how to do it:

- Apply your foot brakes, but don't shift into PARK(P) for a automatic transaxle yet, or into a gear for a manual transaxle.
- 2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
- When the wheel chocks are in place, release the foot brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
- Re-apply the foot brakes. Then apply your handbrake, and then shift to PARK(P) for a automatic transaxle, or First or Reverse gear for a manual transaxle.
- 5. Release the foot brakes.

WHEN YOU ARE READY TO LEAVE AFTER PARKING ON A HILL

- 1. Apply your foot brakes and hold the pedal down while you:
 - Start your engine
 - · Shift into a gear and
 - · Release the handbrake.
- 2. Let up on the brake pedal.
- 3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
- 4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

MAINTENANCE WHEN TRAILER TOWING

Your vehicle will need service more often when you're pulling a trailer. See the maintenance schedule in the service guide for more information on this. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transaxle fluid (don't overfill), engine oil, belt, cooling system, brake fluid and brake adjustment. Each of these is covered in this manual and the index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

ENGINE EXHAUST (CARBON MONOXIDE)

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO) which is colourless and odourless. Prolonged exposure to CO can lead to unconsciousness and death.

Whenever you suspect that exhaust gases are entering the vehicle, immediately take your vehicle to a workshop. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

WARNING

To protect against CO entering the vehicle, inspect the exhaust system and body according to the following recommendations:

- · At each oil change.
- Whenever you notice a change in sound of exhaust system.
- If exhaust system, underbody or rear of vehicle is damaged or becomes corroded.
- Do not run the engine in confined or closed areas, such as garages. Move vehicle to an open area.

(Continued)

WARNING

(Continued)

- Do not sit in parked vehicle with the engine running for extended periods of time.
- When your vehicle is stopped in an unconfined area for any amount of time, put your ventilation in fresh air mode to draw outside air inside. (See "RECIRCULATION" in the index)
- Do not drive with tailgate open. If driving this way is unavoidable, close windows, put your ventilation system in fresh air mode and run the blower at high speed. (See "RECIR-CULATION" in the index)

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

TREND-SETTING TECHNOLOGY

When developing and manufacturing your vehicle, we used environment-friendly and in the main recyclable materials. The production methods used to make your vehicle are likewise environmentally-compatible.

Recycling of production wastes keeps the circulation of material closed. Reduction of energy and water requirements also helps to conserve natural resources.

A highly advanced design means that your vehicle can be easily disassembled at the end of its working life, and the individual materials separated for subsequent re-use.

Materials such as asbestos and cadimium are not used. The refrigerant in the air conditioning system is CFC-free.

END-OF-LIFE VEHICLE RECOVERY

Information on the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available at http://www.chevroleteurope.com.

CLIMATE CONTROL AND AUDIO SYSTEM

•	AIR VENTS	4-2
•	CONTROL PANEL	4-3
•	AIR CONDITIONING	4-6
•	HEATING	. 4-7
•	VENTILATION	4-8
•	DEFROSTING AND DEMISTING	4-9
•	AUXILIARY HEATER	4-9

•	AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL 4-10
•	STEERING WHEEL CLIMATE CONTROL BUTTONS4-1
•	OPERATING TIPS FOR VENTILATION SYSTEM 4-10
•	RDS RADIO AND CD PLAYER 4-1
	RDS RADIO AND CD-CHANGER4-3:

4-2 CLIMATE CONTROL AND AUDIO SYSTEM

AIR VENTS

Side vents

You can direct air through both adjustable side vents toward either side of the front passenger area, or toward the side windows.

Windscreen defroster vents

The windscreen defroster vents direct air onto the windscreen.

Centre vents

You can control the direction of airflow through both adjustable centre vents.

Floor vents

The floor vents direct air into the front foot area.

Front door window defroster vents

The front door window defroster vents direct air onto the side windows, mainly in the area near the outside mirror.

Rear vents

Cooled or heated air travels to the rear foot area through ducts underneath the front seats.

$\underline{\text{To shut off the centre vents and the side}}$ vents

Turn the wheel below or next to each vent outlet to block the airflow through the vents.





CONTROL PANEL

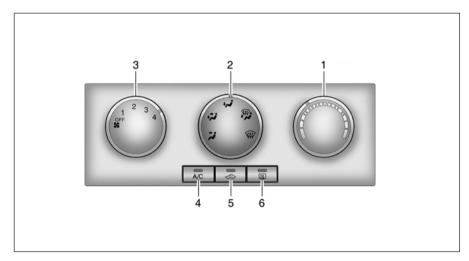
- 1. Temperature control knob.
- 2. Fan control knob.
- 3. Air distribution mode knob.
- 4. Air conditioning (A/C) button.

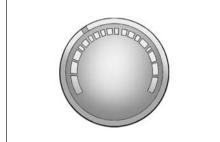
- 5. Recirculation button.
- 6. Rear window and outside mirror defroster button.

TEMPERATURE CONTROL KNOB

The temperature control knob controls the temperature of the air that comes through the air vents.

Turn the knob to the blue area to get cool air and to the red area to get warm air.





FAN CONTROL KNOB

You may control the rate of airflow coming from the system by turning the fan speed control knob. Turn the knob clockwise to increase the fan speed and counterclockwise to decrease the fan speed.

The fan control knob is adjustable from the off position through to step 4.

AIR DISTRIBUTION MODE KNOB

Adjust the air distribution knob to the desired mode which you want to direct the air flow.

The air distribution knob can be set in one of five positions:

Front (プ)

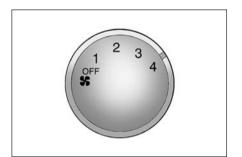
This setting directs air through centre and side vents

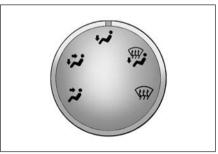
Bi-level (🚧)

Directs air in two ways. Half of the air through the floor vents and the remaining through the centre and side vents.

Floor (***)

Directs most of the air through the floor vents. Some of the air will also be directed to the windscreen defroster vents, side vents, and rear vents. Keep the area under the front seats clear in order not to block the airflow to the rear compartment.





Floor/Defrost ()

This mode directs most of the air through windscreen defroster vents, front door window defroster vents and the floor vents. A small amount of air is also directed to the side vents.

Defrost (₩)

Directs most of the air through the windscreen and front door window defroster vents. A small amount of air is also directed to the side vents.

RECIRCULATION MODE BUTTON

Press this button when driving in dusty conditions or to avoid traffic pollution or outside fumes, and when quick cooling or heating of the passenger area is required. The indicator light will illuminate and interior air will be recirculated.

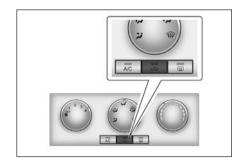
Pressing the recirculation mode button again will draw outside air into the passenger compartment. The indicator will go out.

Your windows may fog if you use the recirculation mode for extended periods. If this happens, press the recirculation button again for the outside air mode.



Driving with recirculation mode for prolonged period of time can make you sleepy.

• Periodically turn to the outside air mode for fresh air.



AIR CONDITIONING

The refrigeration unit of the air conditioning (A/C) system cools and removes moisture, dust, and pollen from the air inside your vehicle

Even with the A/C on, your vehicle will produce warm air if you set the temperature control knob to warm.

NOTE

You may notice water drip under the engine compartment sometimes after driving with A/C on. This is normal because your cooling system removes the moisture from the air.

NOTE

Because the compressor of the cooling system shares the engine power, you may notice slight change in engine power and performance when the compressor operates.

A/C BUTTON

A CAUTION

Using your air conditioning (A/C) system while driving up long hills or in heavy traffic can cause engine overheating. (See "OVERHEATING" in the index)

- · Watch temperature gauge.
- Turn OFF the A/C if the gauge indicates engine overheating.
 Vehicle can be damaged.

To turn on the air conditioning (A/C):

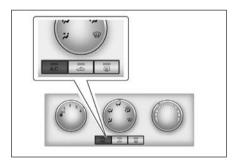
- 1. Start the engine.
- 2. Press A/C button. (Indicator light will come on to confirm the A/C is running)
- 3. Adjust fan speed.

NOTE

The air conditioning will not operate when the fan control knob is in the off position.

To turn off the A/C:

Press A/C button again. (Indicator light will go off to confirm the A/C is not running)



COOLING

Maximum cooling

To achieve maximum cooling during hot weather and when your vehicle has been exposed to the sun for a long time:

- Open windows slightly to let warm air escape.
- 2. Turn air conditioning (A/C) on. (Indicator illuminates)
- 3. Press recirculation button. (Indicator illuminates)
- 4. Turn air distribution knob to FRONT mode ().
- 5. Turn temperature control knob all the way to the blue area for cooling.
- 6. Turn fan control knob to highest speed.

Normal cooling

- Turn on the air conditioning (A/C) button. (Indicator illuminates)
- 2. Press recirculation button. (Indicator illuminates)
- 3. Turn the air distribution knob to FRONT (**) or BI-LEVEL (***).
- 4. Turn temperature control knob to blue area for cooling.
- 5. Adjust the fan control knob to the desired speed.

HEATING

Maximum heating

Use the maximum heating mode for quick heating of the passenger area. Do not use it for lengthy periods because the interior air may become stale and the windows may fog. To clear the windows, turn off the recirculation button to allow fresh air into the vehicle.

For maximum heating:

- Turn off air conditioning (A/C). (Indicator goes off)
- 2. Press recirculation button. (Indicator illuminates)
- 3. Turn air distribution knob to BI-LEVEL (❖) or FLOOR (❖).
- 4. Turn temperature control knob all the way to the red area for heating.
- 5. Turn fan control knob to maximum speed.

Normal heating

- 1. Turn off air conditioning (A/C). (Indicator goes off)
- 2. Turn off recirculation. (Indicator goes off)
- 3. Turn air distribution knob to FLOOR (•••) or BI-LEVEL (•••).
- 4. Turn temperature control knob to red area for heating.
- 5. Turn fan control knob to desired speed.

VENTILATION

Bi-level

Use this setting on cool, but sunny days. Warmer air will flow into the floor area and cool, outside air will flow toward your upper body.

To use this setting:

- 1. Turn off recirculation button. (Indicator goes off)
- 2. Turn air distribution knob to BI-LEVEL (💥).
- 3. Adjust temperature control knob to the desired temperature.
- 4. Turn fan control knob to the desired speed.

Ventilation

To direct air through the centre and side vents:

- 1. Turn off air conditioning (A/C). (Indicator goes off)
- 2. Turn off recirculation. (Indicator goes off)
- 3. Turn the air distribution knob to FRONT (→) or BI-LEVEL (→).
- 4. Turn temperature control knob to blue area for cooling.
- 5. Turn fan control knob to desired speed.

DEFROSTING AND DEMISTING

To defrost the windscreen:

- 1. Turn the air distribution knob to DE-FROST ().
- 2. Turn temperature control knob to red area for warm air.
- 3. Adjust the fan control knob to highest speed for quick defrosting.

NOTE

The A/C and outside air mode are automatically turned on to improve the performance of the defroster when you select DEFROST (#) or FLOOR/DEFROST (#) mode.

To keep the windscreen clear and direct warm air through floor, turn the air distribution knob to FLOOR/DEFROST ().

A CAUTION

The difference between the outside air and the temperature of the windscreen can cause the windows to fog, thereby restricting your front vision.

 Do not use FLOOR/DEFROST (**) or DEFROST (**) in extremely humid weather when the temperature control knob is set to the blue area.

This can lead to an accident which can damage your vehicle and cause personal injuries.

AUXILIARY HEATER (Diesel only)

This supplementary heater is an electrical air heating type and installed in the air conditioner module. This device improves the heating effect by increasing the temperature of flowing air into the passenger compartment.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Full automatic temperature control (FATC) system controls the interior temperature in your vehicle automatically and provides the greatest amount of comfort in the interior regardless of the weather, outside temperature or season. It will achieve the desired temperature when you select the AUTO mode.

The desired temperature is controlled by an in-car sensor signal, coolant temperature, sun sensor signal and the ambient temp. sensor signal.

Sunlight sensor

Sunlight sensor is located in front of the windscreen defroster vents.

Temperature information sampled from the interior of your car is used in establishing

This sensor detects sunlight when operating in AUTO mode.

A CAUTION

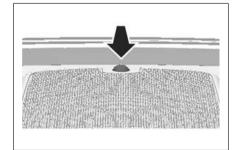
Do not place stickers or other items over the sensor. Doing so could cause the sensor to malfunction.

Temperature sensor

Temperature information sampled from the interior of your car is used in establishing ventilation system requirements when operating in AUTO mode.

A CAUTION

Do not place stickers over the temperature sensor as this will impair its function.

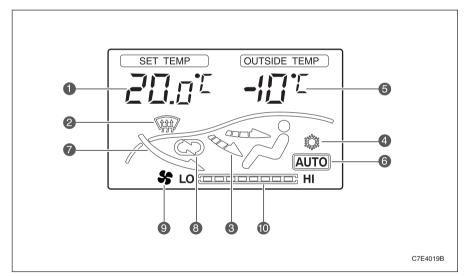




DISPLAY PANEL

- 1. Set temperature
- 2. Defroster indicator
- 3. Air distribution mode indicator
- 4. Air conditioning indicator
- 5. Outside temperature
- 6. Auto mode indicator

- 7. Outside air mode indicator
- 8. Recirculation mode indicator
- 9. Fan operation indicator
- 10. Fan speed indicator



AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL

When you operate your FATC in AUTO mode, the only thing you have to do is just set the desired temperature to your preference.

AUTO button

When the AUTO button is pressed, the interior temperature will be controlled automatically to reach the desired preset temperature. The system will control air distribution mode, fan speed, air conditioning and recirculation functions automatically.

AUTO mode indicator will appear in the DIC (Driver Information Centre) located in the centre of the instrument panel.



To set the desired temperature

Rotate the temperature control knob until the desired temperature is displayed.

Clockwise : The desired temperature will increase by $0.5^{\circ}C(1^{\circ}F)$.

Counterclockwise : The desired temperature will decrease by 0.5°C(1°F).

You can set the desired temperature at your preference between 18°C and 32°C.

NOTE

When desired temperature is set at either "HI" (maximum) or "Lo" (minimum), the fan operates continuously at highest speed even after the interior temperature reaches the preset temperature.

To turn off the system, press the OFF button.

MANUAL CONTROL

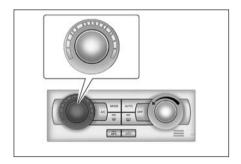
A/C button

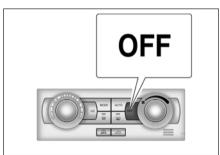
Turns the air conditioning on or off. AUTO mode is cancelled and indicator will go off when this button is pressed.

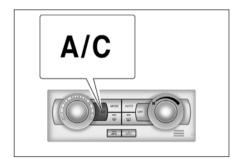
The A/C indicator () will illuminate when the air conditioning is on.

Press the A/C button again to turn the A/C off, or press the OFF button to turn the entire system off.

Refer to "A/C BUTTON" earlier in this section







Air distribution mode change

If the MODE button is pressed, AUTO mode is cancelled and the air distribution mode will be changed in the following sequence.

 $\begin{array}{c} \mathsf{FRONT}(\ \ \ \) \rightarrow \mathsf{BI-LEVEL}(\ \ \ \) \rightarrow \\ \mathsf{FLOOR}(\ \ \ \) \rightarrow \mathsf{FLOOR}/\mathsf{DEFROST}(\ \ \ \ \) \end{array}$

Refer to "AIR DISTRIBUTION MODE KNOB" earlier in this section for more information.

Recirculation mode button

Selects either outside air or recirculated inside air.

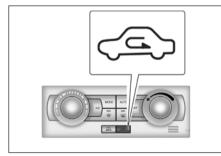
Refer to "RECIRCULATION MODE BUTTON" earlier in this section.

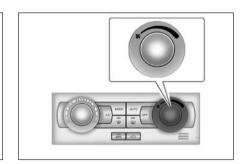
Fan speed control knob

Adjust the fan speed by rotating this knob.

AUTO mode is cancelled when this knob is rotated.







DEFROSTING

Press the DEFROST button () to defrost the windscreen. The A/C and outside air mode are automatically turned on.

Adjust the fan speed using fan speed control

This mode can be cancelled by pressing the defrost button again, air distribution mode knob or AUTO button.

Refer to "DEFROSTING AND DEMISTING" earlier in this section.

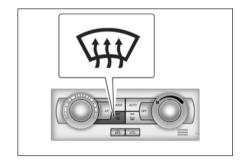
APS

APS (Anti-Pollution Sensor) automatically draws outside air into the passenger compartment or converts air mode into recirculation mode to cut off the exhaust gas from the outside and prevent contaminating air within the passenger compartment.

Press the APS button to activate APS mode. The indicator light on the button will come on.

To turn off the APS mode, press the button again. The indicator light will go off to confirm the APS is not acivated.

Your windows may fog if you use the APS mode for extended periods. If this happens, turn off the APS mode and turn to the outside air mode.





OUTSIDE TEMPERATURE DISPLAY

The outside temperature is always displayed in the DIC. Refer to "DRIVER INFORMATION CENTRE" in the index.

The temperature sensor is located in the front bumper area.

can be affected by road or engine heat while slow driving or idling.

TEMPERATURE UNIT CHANGE

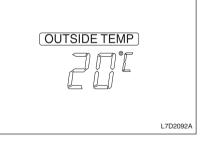
To change the temperature unit, do the followings:

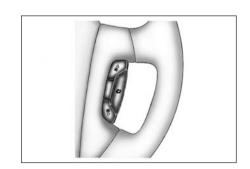
- 1. Press SET button on the driver information centre for more than 2 seconds. The temperature unit will blink.
- Due to its location, the displayed temperature 2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to change the temperature unit (°C ↔°F).

STEERING WHEEL CLIMATE **CONTROL BUTTONS**

Press to change the direction of the airflow.

 \triangle 8 ∇ : Press to increase or decrease the fan speed.





OPERATING TIPS FOR VENTILATION SYSTEM

If your vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight, open the windows before turning on the air conditioning (A/C).

To clear foggy windows on rainy days or in high humidity, decrease the humidity using the A/C.

Turn on the A/C system for a few minutes at least once a week, even in winter or when the A/C system is not being used regularly. This maintains proper lubrication of the compressor and the seals and will prolong the service life of the system.

Driving in stop-and-go traffic may reduce the effectiveness of the A/C system.

The A/C compressor does not operate when the fan control knob is turned off.

If your vehicle is equipped with air conditioner filter, proper maintenance is required. See "AIR CONDITIONER FILTER" in the index. This filter removes dust, pollen and other airborne irritants from the outside air which is drawn into your vehicle.

RDS RADIO AND CD PLAYER

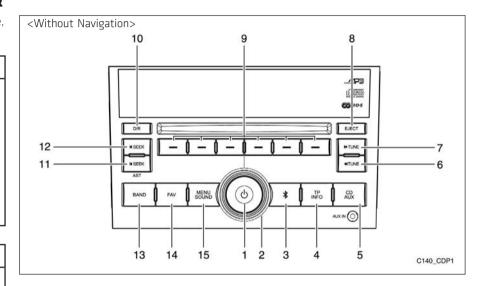
Before using the device for the first time, please read these instructions carefully.

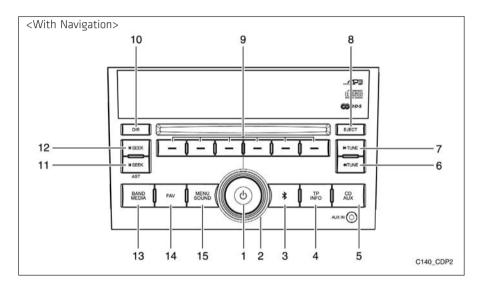
A CAUTION

Road safety has absolute priority. Only operate your car radio if the road and traffic conditions allow you to do so. Familiarise yourself with the unit before setting off on your journey. When inside your vehicle, you should always be able to hear police, fire fighter and ambulance sirens in time. For this reason, set the volume of whatever you are listening to a reasonable level.

A CAUTION

The audio system can be damaged when starting the vehicle with jump leads. Switch the system off.





1. **Power** button

When the power is ON:

Short press: Switches the mute function ON and OFF.

Long press: Turns the unit's power OFF.

When the power is OFF:

Pressing the power button turns the power ON.

2. **Volume** button

Volume adjustment and tone adjustment in the tone control mode.

3. **BLUETOOTH** button

Used to select the BLUETOOTH functions indicated in the display.

4. TP/INFO button

Short press : Traffic announcement reception setting.

Long press: Shows the necessary information for operations in each mode and function, programs being broadcast, and disc information

5. CD/AUX button

Changes the audio mode between CD and AUX.

6. **<<TUNE** button

In the radio mode, selects the radio station (tuning downward).

In the CD mode, used to fast search backward through the tracks being played.

7. >>TUNE button

In the radio mode, selects the radio station (tuning upward).

In the CD mode, used to fast search forward through the tracks being played.

8. **EJECT** button

Used to eject a disc from the unit.

9. **Function** buttons

Used to select the functions indicated in the display.

10. **DIR** button

Used to insert a disc into the unit.

11. **I<SEEK** button

Short press: To search for the next receivable higher station.

Long press: To use Automatic store.

12. > SEEK button

Short press : To search for the previous receivable lower station.

Long press : To use Automatic store.

BAND button (without Navigation)
 Changes the audio mode between AM and FM

BAND/MEDIA button (With Navigation) Short press: Changes the audio mode between AM and FM.

Long press : Switches A-NAVI functions.

14. **FAV** button

Switches among preset channel pages.

15. **MENU SOUND** button

Pressed to select the tone, front/back and left/right volume distribution modes.

POWER ON/OFF

Power On

Press [POWER] to turn on the radio when the power is off.

Power off

Press [POWER] and hold more than 1 second to turn off the radio when the power is on.

AUDIO MUTE

 $\mbox{Press}\left[\mbox{POWER}\right]$ to make audio mute when the power is on.

VOLUME ADJUSTMENT

Turn the volume clockwise to turn up the volume.

Turn the volume counterclockwise to turn down the volume.

AUDIO ADJUSTMENT

Bass Tone Adjustment

Press the [MENU SOUND], then the audio menu displays.

Press the function button under "Bass" and turn the [VOLUME] clockwise or counterclockwise.

Midrange Tone Adjustment

Press the [MENU SOUND], then the audio menu displays.

Press the function button under "**Mid**" and turn the [VOLUME] clockwise or counterclockwise.

Treble Tone Adjustment

Press the [MENU SOUND], then the audio menu displays.

Press the function button under "**Treb**" and turn the [VOLUME] clockwise or counterclockwise.

Fader Control

Press the [MENU SOUND], then the audio menu displays.

Press the function button under "Fad" and turn the [VOLUME] clockwise or counter-clockwise

Preset EQ Selection

Press the [MENU SOUND], then the audio menu displays.

Press the function button under **"P EQ"**, then preset EQ menu displays.

Press the function button under preset EQ mode you want.

To cancel the selected preset EQ, press this [P-EQ] once more with same procedure.

The kinds of preset EQ Mode are POP, Rock, Country, Voice, Jazz, Classic.

RADIO MODE

RADIO MODE SELECTION

Press the [BAND] to listen the radio from other mode.

BAND CHANGE

The band changes from AM to FM or FM to AM all times [BAND] (or BAND/MEDIA) pressed.

MANUAL TUNE UP/DOWN

Press [<<TUNE]/[>>TUNE] to change frequency up/down.

The frequency increase or decrease 1 step all times [<<TUNE]/[>>TUNE] pressed.

SEEK UP/DOWN

Press [|<SEEK]/[>|SEEK] to find next/previous station automatically.

FAVOURITE PRESET MEMORY

It has 6 favourite pages and can store up to 48 stations regardless of AM or FM band.

It can store a station by the following procedure

Step 1: Seek station or tune manually the station you want.

Step 2: Select the favourite page by pressing [FAV].

Step 3: Press and hold a function button more than 1 second under the number where you store this station.

By above procedure, the 48 stations are stored in the favourite preset memory.

RECALL FAVOURITE PRESET

You can listen to the station stored in the favourite preset by using the following procedure.

Step 1: Select the favourite page by pressing [FAV].

Step 2: Press the function button under the favourite preset number which the station you want to listen is stored.

AUTO-STORE FUNCTION

Auto-store

Press [|<SEEK] or [>|SEEK] button long, the radio will start auto-store operation and store 12 stations automatically.

RDS OPERATION

AF On/Off

AF function make the radio track the best station all the time.

Press the Menu in the radio mode and then the radio displays the radio menu.

And press the function button under "RDS" and then the radio displays the RDS menu.

Press the function button under "AF".

The AF is enable or disable whenever you press this function button.

Regional On/Off

Regional function make the radio jump to regional station(Regional off).

Press the Menu in the radio mode and then the radio displays the radio menu.

And press the function button under "RDS" and then the radio displays the RDS menu.

Press the function button under "REG".

The regional options enable or disable whenever you press this function button.

Traffic announcement reception

Press the [TP/INFO] to listen the traffic announcement, the radio enables the traffic announcement.

Press the [TP/INFO] to cancel the traffic announcement if the radio is in the traffic announcement mode.

Traffic station seek

Press the [TP/INFO] in the radio station that hasn't the traffic announcement, the radio searches the next station that has the traffic announcement.

PLAYING A CD(S)

As each CD is inserted, the radio will appear on the display and as each CD is loading, File check will appear on the display.

Once playback begins, the track and track number will appear on the display.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When a CD is in the player and the ignition is turned on, the radio must be turned on before the current CD will start playback. When the ignition and radio are turned on, the CD will start playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

The CD player can play the smaller 8 cm (3 inch) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD

will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, see Care of Your CDs for more information.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen instead.

NOTICE

If you add any label to a CD, insert more than one CD into the slot at a time, or attempt to play scratched or damaged CDs, you could damage the CD player. When using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.

If an error appears on the display, see "CD Messages" later in this section.

CD PLAYBACK MODE SELECTION

Press the [CD/AUX] to play back the disc from other mode.

DISC LOAD

Insert a CD into a CD slot with CD label up, then the radio insert into the slot automatically and play back.

CD EJECT

Press the [EJECT], then the disc will be ejected from the tray from the radio.

Pull out the disc out of the tray.

PAUSE

Press [CD/AUX] to pause playback while a CD is playing back.

"PAUSE" will flash on the display.

Press [CD/AUX] again to start playing the CD.

If the radio is connected with aux unit, then pause function is disable.

NEXT/PREVIOUS TRACK

Press [<<TUNE]/[>>TUNE], then the radio start playback of the next/previous track.

NEXT/PREVIOUS FOLDER

Press [|<SEEK] / [>|SEEK], then the radio start playback of the next/previous folder.

FAST FORWARD/FAST REVERSE

Press and hold [<<TUNE]/[>>TUNE], then the radio plays back fast forward/fast reverser.

RPT (REPEAT)

Press the function button under "RPT", then the radio plays back the current track endless.

To cancel this function, press the function button under "RPT" again.

RDM (RANDOM):

Press the function button under **"RDM"**, then the radio plays back the track randomly.

To cancel this function, press the function button under **"RDM"** again.

INT (SCAN):

Press the function button under "INT", then the radio plays back the first few second for all tracks sequentially.

To cancel this function, press the function button under "INT" again.

USING AN MP3/WMA CD MP3/WMA FORMAT

If you burn your own MP3/WMA disc on a personal computer:

- Make sure the MP3/WMA files are recorded on a CD-R disc.
- Do not mix standard audio and MP3/WMA files on one disc.
- Make sure each MP3/WMA file has a "mp3" or "wma" extension, other file extensions may not work.
- Files can be recorded with a variety of fixed or variable bit rates. Song title, artist name, and album will be available for display by the radio when recorded using ID3 tags version 1 and 2.
- Create a folder structure that makes it easy to find songs while driving. Organise songs by albums using one folder for each album. Each folder or album should contain 18 songs or less.
- Make sure to finalise the disc when burning an MP3/WMA disc, using multiple sessions. It is usually better to burn the disc all at once.

The player will be able to read and play a maximum of 50 folders, 5 sessions, and 999 files. Long file names, folder names may use more disc memory space than necessary. To conserve space on the disc, minimise the length of the file, folder names. You can also play an MP3/WMA CD that was recorded using no file folders. The system can support up to 8 folders in depth, though, keep the depth of the folders to a minimum in order to keep down the complexity and confusion in trying to locate a particular folder during playback. If a CD contains more than the maximum of 50 folders, 5 sessions, and 999 files the player will let you access and navigate up to the maximum, but all items over the maximum will be ignored.

ROOT DIRECTORY

The root directory will be treated as a folder. If the root directory has compressed audio files, the directory will be displayed as ROOT. All files contained directly under the root directory will be accessed prior to any other directory.

EMPTY DIRECTORY OR FOLDER

If a root directory or a folder exists somewhere in the file structure that contains only folders/subfolders and no compressed files directly beneath them, the player will advance to the next folder in the file structure that contains compressed audio files and the empty folder will not be displayed or numbered.

No Folder

When the CD contains only compressed files, the files will be located under the root folder. The next and previous folder functions will have no function on a CD that was recorded without folders. When displaying the name of the folder the radio will display ROOT.

When the CD contains only compressed audio files, but no folders, all files will be located under the root folder. When the radio displays the name of the folder, the radio will display ROOT.

ORDER OF PLAY

Tracks will be played in the following order:

- Playback will begin from the first track under the root directory.
- When all tracks from the root directory have been played, playback will continue from files, according to their numerical listing
- After playing the last track from the last folder, the player will begin playing again at the first track of the first folder or root directory.

FILE SYSTEM AND NAMING

The song name in the ID3 tag will be displayed. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio will display the file name without the extension (such as MP3/WMA) instead.

Track names longer than 32 characters or 4 pages will be shortened. The display will not show parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the filename will not be displayed.

PLAYING AN MP3/WMA

With the ignition on, insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in, Loading, then Filecheck, and then **MP3 or WMA** will appear on the display. The CD should begin playing. You cannot insert a CD with the ACC off.

As each new track starts to play, the track number, and the song name will appear on the display.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When a CD is in the player and the ignition is turned on, the radio must be turned on before the CD will start playback. When the ignition and radio are turned on, the CD will start playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

The CD player can play the smaller 8 cm (3 inch) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, see **Care of Your CDs** for more information.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen instead.

M NOTICE

If you add any label to a CD, insert more than one CD into the slot at a time, or attempt to play scratched or damaged CDs, you could damage the CD player. When using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.

If an error appears on the display, see "CD Messages" later in this section.

All of the CD functions work the same while playing an MP3/WMA, except for those listed here. See "Playing a CD" earlier for more information.

ALL/DIRECTORY MODE

Repeat, intro-scan, random function operates in this folder when all mode is active.

Press the function button under "ALL", then the "All" changes to "DIR".

To cancel DIR mode, press the function button under "DIR" again.

ID3 TAG INFORMATION DISPLAY

Press [TP/INFO] the radio displays the ID3 tag information of the current files.

CD MESSAGES

CHECK CD: If this message appears on the display and/or the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- The format of the CD may not be compatible. See "MP3 Format" earlier in this section.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer when reporting the problem.

AUX MODE

The radio has one auxiliary input The security system will protect against theft jack(diameter 3.5mm) located on the lower right side of the faceplate.

This is not an audio output; do not plug the headphone set into the front auxiliary input jack.

You can, however, connect an external audio device such as an iPod, laptop computer, MP3 player, CD changer, or XM[™] receiver, etc. to the auxiliary input jack for use as another source for audio listening.

AUX IN MODE SELECTION

Press [CD/AUX] in the other playback mode. If the auxiliary jack doesn't detect the presence of an output jack, the aux mode will be prevented from coming up.

SECURITY SYSTEM

of the radio.

When an ID code is registered with the security lock function, even if the unit is stolen and installed elsewhere it will not be possible to use it unless the registered ID code is input.

Setting the security lock (registering the ID

Turn off the radio.

⇒ Press [POWER] simultaneously holding down [TP/INFO] and the leftmost function button.

The ID code registration mode will be established and the number, 1 to 6, will appear on the display.

- ⇒ Press the function buttons beneath "1 to 6" on the display to enter the four digit codes.
- ⇒ Press [POWER].

The ID code will be registered and the radio will be turned off.

RELEASING THE SECURITY LOCK

Turn off the radio.

⇒ Press [POWER] simultaneously holding down [TP/INFO] and the leftmost function button.

The ID code registration mode will be established and the number, 1 to 6, will appear on the display.

- ⇒ Press the function buttons beneath "1 to 6" on the display to enter the four digit codes.
- ⇒ Press [POWER].

If the code entry agrees with the registered code, the security lock is released and the radio is turned off.

NOTE

Once an ID code has been registered, this ID code will be necessary to release the security lock. Make sure that you do not forget the security code.

If an incorrect code is input in ten successive attempts to release the security lock, no further attempts will be possible for approximately one hour.

BLUETOOTH MODE

BLUETOOTH

Press the [BLUETOOTH]. Then it moves on the pairing procedure.

Pairing procedure

Step 1 : Press the button below "PAIRING" in the display.

Step 2 : Search & select the device name "CAR AUDIO" for Bluetooth on a phone.

The audio shall display name of the connected device for 3 seconds.

The audio shall return "Mode Selection" after connection procedure and "BT" will be displayed.

Make a call

Step 1: Press the button below "Call" in the display.

Step 2 : Press the button below "Last Call" in the display.

The audio shall display "Dialing..." & "Connected".

Incoming Call

The audio shall display "Incoming Call..." for 3 seconds, then the audio shall display "Incoming call number" until user presses "ANSWER" button or "DECLINE" button.

- 1) Press the "ANSWER" button then the audio will be on the line.
- 2) Press the "DECLINE" button, the audio unit shall return to the last mode.

On the Line

Press the button below "MIC MUTE" using a phone, microphone is mute.

Press the button below "PRIVATE" or the POWER button during using a phone, the mode will change "private mode".

Press the button below "HANG UP" during using a phone, the audio shall return to the last mode.

A2DP MODE

Press the button below "AUDIO PLAY" on the display.

 \Rightarrow PLAY

Press the button below [**>**] to playback MP3 files of the connected handset.

⇒ Pause

Press the button below [||] to pause playback while MP3 file is playback.

⇒ Next/Previous Track

Press the button below $[\![\Delta/\mathbb{T}]\!]$, then the MP3 file start playback of the next/previous track.

Auto Connection

Case 1: The audio will try to connect previous BT device automatically when radio power on.

Case 2: BT device which connects the audio set comes back to the audio unit after the BT device is out of 10 m distance from a audio set, The audio set will try to connect the BT device automatically.

STEERING WHEEL REMOTE CONTROLLER

Power button

Power on: Press this button.

Power off: Press this button more than 1 second

Audio mute: Press this button when the power is on.

2. Volume up button

1 step increase: Press this button less then 1 second, then the radio increases the volume level.

Automatic volume up: Press this button more than 1 second, then the radio increases the volume level step by step.

3. Volume down button

Press this Volume Down Button to decrease the volume level.

1 step decrease: Press this button less than 1 second, then the radio decreases the volume level.

Continuous decrease: Press this button more than 1 second, then the radio decrease volume level step by step.

4. **SEEK** button

1) RADIO MODE: Press this button less than 1 second to move to the preset radio station. (Favourite preset #1→#2→#3→#4...)

Press this button more than 1 second to search for the next station.

2) CDP MODE: Press this button less than 1 second to go to the next track. (Track01→Track02→...)

Press this button more than 1 second to play back the track fast forward.

5. **MODE** button

The play mode will be change by following order whenever this button is pressed. $FM \rightarrow AM \rightarrow CD(MP3/WMA) \rightarrow (AUX) \rightarrow FM...$

6. CALL

Short press : Make a call (first pressing), Dialing (second pressing)

Long press : Cancel the making a call.

When incoming call, Short press : Answer the call.

Long press : Cancel the call.

When On the line, Long press : hang up the call.

* Temperature Durability

ALL functional requirements shall be met between -20°C and +70°C of the temperature Range.

RDS RADIO AND CD CHANGER

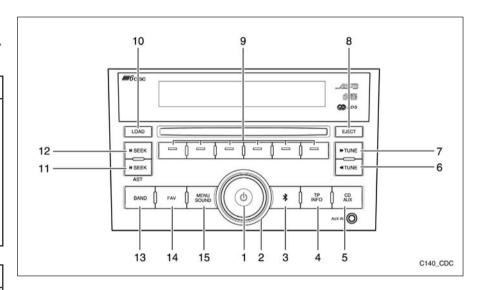
Before using the device for the first time, please read these instructions carefully.

A CAUTION

Road safety has absolute priority. Only operate your car radio if the road and traffic conditions allow you to do so. Familiarise yourself with the unit before setting off on your journey. When inside your vehicle, you should always be able to hear police, fire fighter and ambulance sirens in time. For this reason, set the volume of whatever you are listening to a reasonable level.

A CAUTION

The audio system can be damaged when starting the vehicle with jump leads. Switch the system off.



Power button

When the power is ON:

Short press: Switches the mute function ON and OFF.

Long press: Turns the unit's power OFF.

When the power is OFF:

Pressing the power button turns the power ON.

2. **Volume** button

Volume adjustment and tone adjustment in the tone control mode.

3. **BLUETOOTH** button

Used to select the BLUETOOTH functions indicated in the display.

4. TP/INFO button

Short press: Traffic announcement reception setting.

Long press: Shows the necessary information for operations in each mode and function, programs being broadcast, and disc information.

5. CD/AUX button

Changes the audio mode between CD and AUX.

6. **<<TUNE** button

In the radio mode, selects the radio station (tuning downward).

In the CD mode, used to fast search backward through the tracks being played.

7. >>TUNE button

In the radio mode, selects the radio station (tuning upward).

In the CD mode, used to fast search forward through the tracks being played.

8. **EJECT** button

Used to eject a disc from the unit.

9. **Function** buttons

Used to select the functions indicated in the display.

10. **LOAD** button

Used to insert a disc into the unit.

11. **|<SEEK** button

Short press : To search for the next receivable higher station.

Long press: To use Automatic store.

12. > SEEK button

Short press: To search for the previous receivable lower station.

Long press: To use Automatic store.

13. BAND button

Changes the audio mode between AM and FM.

14. **FAV** button

Switches among preset channel pages.

15. **MENU SOUND** button

Pressed to select the tone, front/back and left/right volume distribution modes.

POWER ON/OFF

Power On

Press [POWER] to turn on the radio when the power is off.

Power off

Press [POWER] and hold more than 1 second to turn off the radio when the power is on.

AUDIO MUTE

Press [POWER] button to make audio mute when the power is on.

VOLUME ADJUSTMENT

Turn the volume clockwise to turn up the volume.

Turn the volume counterclockwise to turn down the volume.

AUDIO ADJUSTMENT

Bass Tone Adjustment

Press the [MENU SOUND], then the audio menu displays.

Press the function button under "Bass" and turn the [VOLUME] clockwise or counterclockwise.

Midrange Tone Adjustment

Press the [MENU SOUND], then the audio menu displays.

Press the function button under "Mid" and turn the [VOLUME] clockwise or counterclockwise.

Treble Tone Adjustment

Press the [MENU SOUND], then the audio menu displays.

Press the function button under "**Treb**" and turn the [VOLUME] clockwise or counterclockwise.

Balance Control

Press the [MENU SOUND], then the audio menu displays.

Press the function button under "Bal" and turn the [VOLUME] clockwise or counterclockwise.

Fader Control

Press the [MENU SOUND], then the audio menu displays.

Press the function button under "Fad" and turn the [VOLUME] clockwise or counter-clockwise.

Preset EQ Selection

Press the [MENU SOUND], then the audio menu displays.

Press the function button under "P EQ", then preset EQ menu displays.

Press the function button under preset EQ mode you want.

To cancel the selected preset EQ, press this [P-EQ] once more with same procedure.

The kinds of preset EQ Mode are POP, Rock, Country, Voice, Jazz, Classic.

RADIO MODE

RADIO MODE SELECTION

Press the [BAND] to listen the radio from other mode.

BAND CHANGE

The band changes from AM to FM or FM to AM all times [BAND] pressed.

MANUAL TUNE UP/DOWN

Press [<<TUNE]/[>>TUNE] to change frequency up/down.

The frequency increase or decrease 1 step all times [<<TUNE]/[>>TUNE] pressed.

SEEK UP/DOWN

Press [|<SEEK]/[>|SEEK] to find next/previous station automatically.

FAVOURITE PRESET MEMORY

It has 6 favourite pages and can store up to 48 stations regardless of AM or FM band.

It can store a station by the following procedure

Step 1: Seek station or tune manually the station you want.

Step 2: Select the favourite page by pressing [FAV].

Step 3: Press and hold a function button more than 1 second under the number where you store this station.

By above procedure, the 48 stations are stored in the favourite preset memory.

RECALL FAVOURITE PRESET

You can listen to the station stored in the favourite preset by the following procedure.

Step 1: Select the favourite page by pressing [FAV].

Step 2: Press the function button under the favourite preset number which the station you want to listen is stored.

AUTO-STORE FUNCTION

Auto-store

Press [|<SEEK] or [>|SEEK] button long, the radio will start auto-store operation and store 12 stations automatically.

RDS OPERATION

AF On/Off

AF function make the radio track the best station all the time.

Press the Menu in the radio mode and then the radio displays the radio menu.

And press the function button under "RDS" and then the radio displays the RDS menu.

Press the function button under "AF".

The AF is enable or disable whenever you press this function button.

Regional On/Off

Regional function make the radio jump to regional station(Regional off).

Press the Menu in the radio mode and then the radio displays the radio menu.

And press the function button under "RDS" and then the radio displays the RDS menu.

Press the function button under "REG".

The regional options enable or disable whenever you press this function button.

Traffic announcement reception

Press the [TP/INFO] to listen the traffic announcement, the radio enables the traffic announcement.

Press the [TP/INFO] to cancel the traffic announcement if the radio is in the traffic announcement mode.

Traffic station seek

Press the [TP/INFO] in the radio station that hasn't the traffic announcement, the radio searches the next station that has the traffic announcement

PLAYING A CD(S)

As each CD is inserted, the radio will appear on the display and as each CD is loading, File check will appear on the display.

Once playback begins, the track and track number will appear on the display.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When a CD is in the player and the ignition is turned on, the radio must be turned on before the current CD will start playback. When the ignition and radio are turned on, the CD will start playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

The CD player can play the smaller 8 cm (3 inch) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as

cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, see Care of Your CDs for more information.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen instead.

NOTICE

If you add any label to a CD, insert more than one CD into the slot at a time, or attempt to play scratched or damaged CDs, you could damage the CD player. When using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.

If an error appears on the display, see "CD Messages" later in this section.

CD PLAYBACK MODE SELECTION

Press the [CD/AUX] to play back the disc from other mode.

DISC LOAD

This radio hold up to 6 discs.

Step 1: Press the [LOAD] and then the radio will show the number of empty disc.

Step 2: Press the function button under the disc number you want to insert.

Step 3: Insert a CD into a CD slot with CD label up, then the radio insert into the slot automatically and play back.

To insert multiple CDs, do the following:

Step 1: Press and hold the load button for one second. You will hear a beep and a message to load multiple discs will be displayed.

Step 2: Follow the displayed instruction on when to insert the discs.

The CD player can takes up to 6 discs.

NOTE

Press the LOAD button again to cancel loading more CDs.

CD EJECT

Press the [EJECT], then radio show the disc number being inserted in the radio.

Press the function button under the number, the disc be ejected from the tray from the radio

Pull out the disc out of the tray.

Press the [EJECT] more than 1 second, then the radio eject the discs in the radio in the order.

PAUSE

Press [CD/AUX] to pause playback while a CD is playing back.

"PAUSE" will flash on the display.

Press [CD/AUX] again to start playing the CD.

If the radio is connected with aux unit, then pause function doesn't be enable.

NEXT/PREVIOUS DISC

Press the function button under "DISC+/DISC-" to change the disc, then the radio play back the first track of the Next/Previous disc.

NEXT/PREVIOUS TRACK

Press [<<TUNE]/[>>TUNE], then the radio start playback of the next/previous track.

NEXT/PREVIOUS FOLDER

Press [|<SEEK] / [>|SEEK], then the radio start playback of the next/previous folder.

FAST FORWARD/FAST REVERSE

Press and hold [<<TUNE]/[>>TUNE], then the radio plays back fast forward/fast reverser.

RPT (REPEAT)

Press the function button under **"RPT"**, then the radio plays back the current track endless.

To cancel this function, press the function button under "RPT" again.

RDM (RANDOM):

Press the function button under "RDM", then the radio plays back the track randomly.

To cancel this function, press the function button under "RDM" again.

INT (SCAN):

Press the function button under "INT", then the radio plays back the first few second for all tracks sequentially.

To cancel this function, press the function button under "INT" again.

USING AN MP3/WMA CD MP3/WMA FORMAT

If you burn your own MP3/WMA disc on a personal computer:

- Make sure the MP3/WMA files are recorded on a CD-R disc.
- Do not mix standard audio and MP3/WMA files on one disc.
- Make sure each MP3/WMA file has a "mp3" or "wma" extension, other file extensions may not work.
- Files can be recorded with a variety of fixed or variable bit rates. Song title, artist name, and album will be available for display by the radio when recorded using ID3 tags version 1 and 2.
- Create a folder structure that makes it easy to find songs while driving. Organise songs by albums using one folder for each album. Each folder or album should contain 18 songs or less.
- Make sure to finalise the disc when burning an MP3/WMA disc, using multiple sessions. It is usually better to burn the disc all at once.

The player will be able to read and play a maximum of 50 folders, 5 sessions, and 999 files. Long file names, folder names may use more disc memory space than necessary. To conserve space on the disc, minimise the length of the file, folder names. You can also play an MP3/WMA CD that was recorded using no file folders. The system can support up to 8 folders in depth, though, keep the depth of the folders to a minimum in order to keep down the complexity and confusion in trying to locate a particular folder during playback. If a CD contains more than the maximum of 50 folders, 5 sessions, and 999 files the player will let you access and navigate up to the maximum, but all items over the maximum will be ignored.

ROOT DIRECTORY

The root directory will be treated as a folder. If the root directory has compressed audio files, the directory will be displayed as ROOT. All files contained directly under the root directory will be accessed prior to any other directory.

EMPTY DIRECTORY OR FOLDER

If a root directory or a folder exists somewhere in the file structure that contains only folders/subfolders and no compressed files directly beneath them, the player will advance to the next folder in the file structure that contains compressed audio files and the empty folder will not be displayed or numbered.

No Folder

When the CD contains only compressed files, the files will be located under the root folder. The next and previous folder functions will have no function on a CD that was recorded without folders. When displaying the name of the folder the radio will display ROOT.

When the CD contains only compressed audio files, but no folders, all files will be located under the root folder. When the radio displays the name of the folder, the radio will display ROOT.

ORDER OF PLAY

Tracks will be played in the following order:

- Playback will begin from the first track under the root directory.
- When all tracks from the root directory have been played, playback will continue from files, according to their numerical listing.
- After playing the last track from the last folder, the player will begin playing again at the first track of the first folder or root directory.

FILE SYSTEM AND NAMING

The song name in the ID3 tag will be displayed. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio will display the file name without the extension (such as MP3/WMA) instead.

Track names longer than 32 characters or 4 pages will be shortened. The display will not show parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the filename will not be displayed.

PLAYING AN MP3/WMA

With the ignition on, insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in, Loading, then File check, and then **MP3 or WMA** will appear on the display. The CD should begin playing. You cannot insert a CD with the ACC off.

As each new track starts to play, the track number, and the song name will appear on the display.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When a CD is in the player and the ignition is turned on, the radio must be turned on before the CD will start playback. When the ignition and radio are turned on, the CD will start playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

The CD player can play the smaller 8 cm (3 inch) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, see **Care of Your CDs** for more information.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen instead.

NOTICE

If you add any label to a CD, insert more than one CD into the slot at a time, or attempt to play scratched or damaged CDs, you could damage the CD player. When using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials. liquids, and debris.

If an error appears on the display, see "CD Messages" later in this section.

All of the CD functions work the same while playing an MP3WMA, except for those listed here. See "Playing a CD" earlier for more information.

ALL/DIRECTORY MODE

Repeat, intro-scan, random function operates in this folder when all mode is active.

Press the function button under "ALL", then the "All" changes to "DIR".

To cancel DIR mode, press the function button under "DIR" again.

ID3 TAG INFORMATION DISPLAY

Press [TP/INFO], the radio displays the ID3 tag information of the current files.

CD MESSAGES

CHECK CD: If this message appears on the display and/or the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- The format of the CD may not be compatible. See "MP3 Format" earlier in this section.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer when reporting the problem.

AUX MODE

The radio has one auxiliary input jack(diameter 3.5mm) located on the lower right side of the faceplate.

This is not an audio output; do not plug the headphone set into the front auxiliary input jack.

You can, however, connect an external audio device such as an iPod, laptop computer, MP3 player, CD changer, or XM™ receiver, etc. to the auxiliary input jack for use as another source for audio listening.

AUX IN MODE SELECTION

Press [CD/AUX] in the other playback mode. If the auxiliary jack doesn't detect the presence of an output jack, the aux mode will be prevented from coming up.

SECURITY SYSTEM

The security system will protect against theft of the radio.

When an ID code is registered with the security lock function, even if the unit is stolen and installed elsewhere it will not be possible to use it unless the registered ID code is input.

Setting the security lock (registering the ID code)

Turn off the radio.

⇒ Press [POWER] simultaneously holding down [TP/INFO] and the leftmost function button.

The ID code registration mode will be established and the number, 1 to 6, will appear on the display.

- ⇒ Press the function buttons beneath "1 to 6" on the display to enter the four digit codes.
- ⇒ Press [POWER].

The ID code will be registered and the radio will be turned off.

RELEASING THE SECURITY LOCK

Turn off the radio.

⇒ Press [POWER] simultaneously holding down [TP/INFO] and the leftmost function button.

The ID code registration mode will be established and the number, 1 to 6, will appear on the display.

- ⇒ Press the function buttons beneath "1 to 6" on the display to enter the four digit codes.
- ⇒ Press [POWER].

If the code entry agrees with the registered code, the security lock is released and the radio is turned off.

NOTE

Once an ID code has been registered, this ID code will be necessary to release the security lock. Make sure that you do not forget the security code.

If an incorrect code is input in ten successive attempts to release the security lock, no further attempts will be possible for approximately one hour.

BLUETOOTH MODE

BLUETOOTH

Press the [BLUETOOTH]. Then it moves on the pairing procedure.

Pairing procedure

Step 1 : Press the button below "PAIRING" in the display.

Step 2 : Search & select the device name "CAR AUDIO" for Bluetooth on a phone.

The audio shall display name of the connected device for 3 seconds.

The audio shall return "Mode Selection" after connection procedure and "BT" will be displayed.

Make a call

Step 1 : Press the button below "Call" in the display.

Step 2 : Press the button below "Last Call" in the display.

The audio shall display "Dialing..." & "Connected".

Incoming Call

The audio shall display "Incoming Call..." for 3 seconds, then the audio shall display "Incoming call number" until user presses "ANSWER" button or "DECLINE" button.

- 1) Press the "ANSWER" button then the audio will be on the line.
- 2) Press the "DECLINE" button, the audio unit shall return to the last mode.

On the Line

Press the button below "MIC MUTE" using a phone, microphone is mute.

Press the button below "PRIVATE" or the POWER button during using a phone, the mode will change "private mode".

Press the button below "HANG UP" during using a phone, the audio shall return to the last mode.

A2DP MODE

Press the button below "AUDIO PLAY" on the display.

 \Rightarrow PLAY

Press the button below [**>**] to playback MP3 files of the connected handset.

⇒ Pause

Press the button below[]]to pause playback while MP3 file is playback.

⇒ Next/Previous Track

Press the button below [▲/▼], then the MP3 file start playback of the next/ previous track.

Auto Connection

Case 1: The audio will try to connect previous BT device automatically when radio power on.

Case 2: BT device which connects the audio set comes back to the audio unit after the BT device is out of 10 m distance from a audio set, The audio set will try to connect the BT device automatically.

STEERING WHEEL REMOTE CONTROLLER

Power button

Power on: Press this button.

Power off: Press this button more than 1 second.

Audio mute: Press this button when the power is on.

2. **Volume up** button

1 step increase: Press this button less then 1 second, then the radio increases the volume level.

Automatic volume up: Press this button more than 1 second, then the radio increases the volume level step by step.

3. **Volume down** button

Press this Volume Down Button to decrease the volume level.

1 step decrease: Press this button less than 1 second, then the radio increases the volume level.

Continuous decrease: Press this button more than 1 second, then the radio decrease volume level step by step.

4. **SEEK** button

Press this button more than 1 second to search for the next station.

2) CDP MODE: Press this button less than 1 second to go to the next track. (Track01→Track02→...)

Press this button more than 1 second to play back the track fast forward.

5. MODE button

The play mode will be change by following order whenever this button is pressed. $FM \rightarrow AM \rightarrow CD(MP3/WMA) \rightarrow (AUX) \rightarrow FM...$

6. CALL

Short press : Make a call (first pressing), Dialing (second pressing)

Long press: Cancel the making a call.

When incoming call, Short press : Answer the call.

Long press : Cancel the call.

When On the line, Long press : hang up the call.

* Temperature Durability

ALL functional requirements shall be met between -20°C and +70°C of the temperature Range.

5 EMERGENCIES

SPARE TYRE, JACK AND VEHICLE TOOLS5-2	TOWING THE VEHICLE 5-18
TYRE SEALANT AND COMPRESSOR KIT5-3	ROCKING YOUR VEHICLE 5-22
HOW TO CHANGE A FLAT TYRE5-11	• OVERHEATING 5-23
STADTING THE ENGINE WITH HIMDED CARLES 5.16	

SPARE TYRE, JACK AND VEHICLE TOOLS

Your spare tyre, jack and tools are secured in the luggage compartment and below the rear bumper.

In some models, jack handle type is applied to the vehicle.

The actual tools in the vehicle may differ from the description.

WARNING

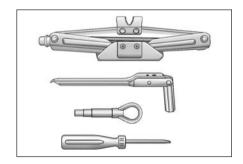
Always store jack, spare tyre, other tools and equipment securely in their correct location.

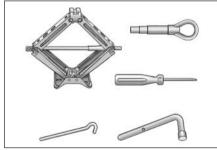
 Do not store jack, spare tyre, or other equipment in passenger compartment.

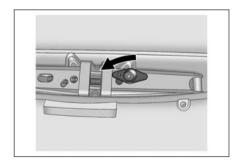
In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment can be thrown around inside your vehicle and cause personal injuries.

Removing the jack and tools

- 1. Open the tailgate.
- 2. Pull up the floor cover and locate the wingbolt.
- 3. Remove the wing-bolt from the jack by rotaing it counterclockwise.
- 4. Remove the jack and tool bag.
- Remove the straps holding the bag containing the tool. Then remove the wheel wrench and jack handle from the bag.







Removing the spare tyre

- 1. Use a flat-blade screwdriver to pry off the hole cover above the rear bumper.
- 2. Use the supplied wheel wrench to loosen a bolt to fix a spare tyre.
- 3. Unhook the cable on the tyre carrier which is located below the rear bumper.
- 4. Remove the spare tyre from the tyre carrier.

NOTE

To eliminate the possibility of the jack and tools rattling while the car is moving, stow them securely under the floor covering.

Jack specification

Maximum working load : 900 kg

WARNING

We designed the jack for use on your vehicle only.

- Do not use jack provided with your vehicle on other vehicles.
- Never exceed the jack's maximum permissible load.

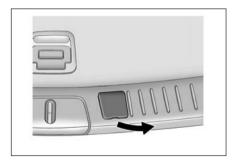
Use of this jack on other vehicles may damage the other vehicles or your jack and lead to personal injury.

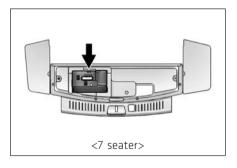
TYRE SEALANT AND COMPRESSOR KIT

STORING THE TYRE SEALANT AND COMPRESSOR KIT

To access the tyre sealant and compressor kit:

- 1. Open the liftgate.
- 2. Lift the cover.





5-4 EMERGENCIES

Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit.

To store the tyre sealant and compressor kit, reverse the steps.

WARNING

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled.

It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation.

WARNING

Overinflating a tyre could cause the tyre to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tyre to its recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

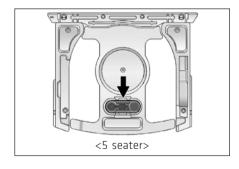
WARNING

Storing the tyre sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tyre sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

If this vehicle has a tyre sealant and compressor kit, there may not be a spare tyre, tyre changing equipment, and on some vehicles there may not be a place to store a tyre.

The tyre sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (¼ in) in the tread area of the tyre. It can also be used to inflate an under inflated tyre.

If the tyre has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tyre is too severely damaged for the tyre sealant and compressor kit to be effective.



Read and follow all of the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:

- (1). Pressure Gauge
- (2). Pressure Deflation Button (White)
- (3). Selector Switch
- (4). On/Off Button (Orange)
- (5). Tyre Sealant Canister
- (6). Air Only Hose (Black Hose/White Tip)

- (7). Sealant/Air Hose (Clear Hose/Orange Tip)
- (8). Power Plug

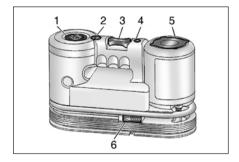
TYRE SEALANT

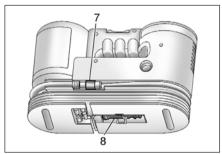
Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the sealant canister.

Check the tyre sealant expiration date on the sealant canister. The sealant canister should be replaced before its expiration date.

Replacement sealant canisters are available at your local dealer. See "Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister" following.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tyre. After usage, the sealant canister and sealant/air hose assembly must be replaced. See "Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister" following.





USING THE TYRE SEALANT AND COMPRESSOR KIT TO TEMPORARILY SEAL AND INFLATE A PUNCTURED TYRE

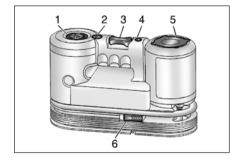
When using the tyre sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a heated environment for five minutes.

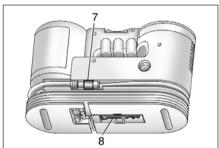
This will help to inflate the tyre faster.

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers.

penetrated the tyre.

- 1. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor 5. Attach the sealant/air hose (7) onto the kit from its storage location.
- 2. Unwrap the sealant/air hose (7) and the power plug (8).
- 3. Place the kit on the ground. Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
- Do not remove any objects that have 4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tyre by turning it counterclockwise.
 - tyre valve stem. Turn it clockwise until it
 - 6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets.





If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, 9. do not use the cigarette lighter.

If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window

- 7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
- 8. Turn the selector switch (3) counterclockwise to the Sealant + Air position.

9. Press the on/off (4) button to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit on.

The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tyre.

The pressure gauge (1) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tyre. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tyre, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tyre inflates with air only.

Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge

 The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tyre and Loading Information label

The pressure gauge (1) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

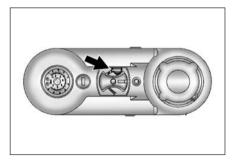
A CAUTION

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven farther. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tyre valve.

11. Press the on/off button (4) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

The tyre is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tyre, therefore, Steps 12 through 18 must be done immediately after Step 11.

Be careful while handling the tyre sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.



5-8 EMERGENCIES

- 12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
- 13. Turn the sealant/air hose (7) counterclockwise to remove it from the tyre valve stem.
- 14. Replace the tyre valve stem cap.
- 15. Replace the sealant/air hose (7), and the power plug (8) back in their original location.
- 16. If the flat tyre was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the sealant canister (5) and place it in a highly visible location.

- Do not exceed the speed on this label until 20. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tyre the damaged tyre is repaired or replaced.
- 17. Return the equipment to its original 21. Dispose of the used sealant canister (5) storage location in the vehicle.
- 18. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km (5 miles) to distribute the sealant in the tyre.
- 19. Stop at a safe location and check the tyre pressure. Refer to Steps 1 through 11 under "Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tyre (Not Punctured)."

If the tyre pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant cannot seal the tyre.

If the tyre pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended inflation pressure, inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure.

- or vehicle.
- and sealant/air hose (7) assembly at a local dealer or in accordance with local regulations and practices.
- 22. Replace it with a new canister available from your dealer.
- 23. After temporarily sealing a tyre using the tyre sealant and compressor kit, take the vehicle to an authorized dealer within a 161 km (100 miles) of driving to have the tyre repaired or replaced.

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND COMPRESSOR KIT WITHOUT SEALANT TO INFLATE A TYRE (NOT PUNCTURED)

To use the air compressor to inflate a tyre with air only and not sealant:

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers.

- 1. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit from its storage location.
- 2. Unwrap the air only hose (6) and the power plug (8).
- Place the kit on the ground.
 Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose

will reach it.

- 4. Remove the tyre valve stem cap by turning it counterclockwise.
- 5. Attach the air only hose (6) onto the tyre valve stem and turn it clockwise until tight.
- 6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets.

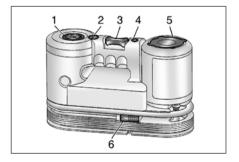
If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

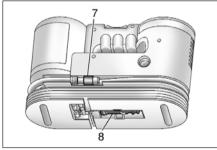
If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.

- 7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
- 8. Turn the selector switch (3) clockwise to the Air Only position.
- 9. Press the on/off (4) button to turn the compressor on.

The compressor will inflate the tyre with air only.



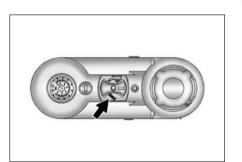


5-10 EMERGENCIES

10. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (1). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tyre and Loading Information label.

The pressure gauge (1) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

If you inflate the tyre higher than the recommended pressure you can adjust the excess pressure by pressing the pressure deflation button (4) until the proper pressure reading is reached.



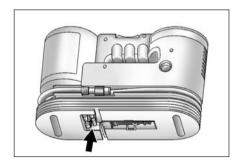
This option is only functional when using the air only hose (6).

11. Press the on/off button (4) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

Be careful while handling the tyre sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

- 12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
- 13. Disconnect the air only hose (6) from the tyre valve stem, by turning it counterclockwise, and replace the tyre valve stem cap.
- 14. Replace the air only hose (6) and the power plug (8) back in its original location.
- 15. Place the equipment in the original storage location in the vehicle.

The tyre sealant and compressor kit has an accessory adapter located in a compartment on the bottom of its housing that may be used to inflate air mattresses, balls, etc.

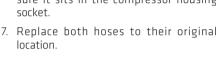


REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION OF THE **SEALANT CANISTER**

To remove the sealant canister:

- 1. Unwrap both hoses.
- 2. Slide the canister away from the compressor housing.
- 3. Unscrew the hose connected to the canister.
- 4. Replace with a new canister which is available from your dealer.
- 5. Attach the hose to the canister and tighten.

- 6. Slide the new canister into place. Make sure it sits in the compressor housing
- 7. Replace both hoses to their original



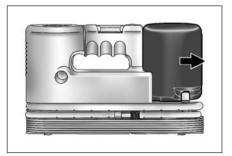
HOW TO CHANGE A FLAT TYRE

If a tyre goes flat, observe following safety instruction before you change the tyre.

Tyre change safety precautions

- 1. Turn on the hazard flashers.
- 2. Pull off the road to a safe place away from traffic.
- 3. Park on a firm and level surface. See "PARKING YOUR VEHICLE" in the index.
- 4. Turn off engine and remove key.
- 5. Set parking brake.
- 6. Have all passengers get out of vehicle and stand in a safe place.
- 7. Use a wedge, block of wood, or rocks in front of and behind the tyre that is diagonally opposite the tyre you plan to change.

Failure to follow these safety precautions can cause your vehicle to slip off the jack possibly causing serious injury.



5-12 EMERGENCIES

How to change a flat tyre

- Remove the jack, wheel wrench, jack handle and spare tyre from the storage in the luggage compartment and below the rear bumper.
- 2. Use the wheel wrench to loosen the wheel nuts by one turn each.

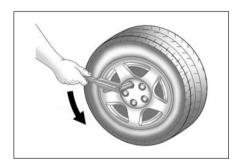
A CAUTION

Do not remove any of the nuts until you have raised the wheel off the ground.

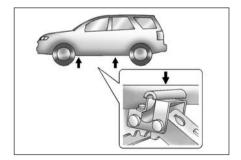
- 3. Insert the jack handle and the wheel wrench into the jack.
- 4. Rotate the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the lift head slightly.
- 5. Locate the jack according to the figure below. There is a notch at the front and rear of the vehicle under the doors.
- 6. Place the jack vertically at the front or the rear jacking notch next to the wheel you plan to change.

A CAUTION

Do not attempt to raise vehicle until the jack is in the proper position, and secure both to the vehicle and the ground.







 Raise vehicle by rotating wheel wrench or jack handle clockwise until lifting head fits firmly into appropriate notch and tyre is off the ground about 1 inch (2.5 cm).

A CAUTION

As the jack begins to raise the vehicle, make sure jack is properly placed so it will not slip.

NOTE

Do not raise vehicle more than is necessary to change wheel.



 Never get under car or start or run the engine while car is supported by a jack.

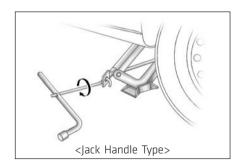
Vehicle may slip off the jack resulting in serious injury or death.

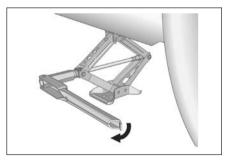
- 8. Remove wheel nuts completely by turning counterclockwise.
- 9. Remove tyre and wheel.
- 10. Mount spare tyre on the wheel hub.

A CAUTION

- Never use oil or grease on wheel nuts.
- Always use correct wheel nuts.
- As soon as possible, take your car to a workshop and have the wheel nuts tightened according to specifications.
 We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

If tightened incorrectly, the nuts might come loose.





5-14 EMERGENCIES

- 11. Reinstall the wheel nuts. Tighten each nut by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.
- Rotate wheel wrench or jack handle counterclockwise and lower vehicle to the ground.
- 13. Tighten wheel nuts firmly to 92 lb-ft (125 N•m) in a crisscross sequence. 1→2→3→4→5 (See fig. below)



Make sure to use the correct nuts or bolts tightened to the proper torque.

Incorrect wheel nuts or bolts or improperly tightened wheel nuts or bolts can cause the wheel to come loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident.

- 14. Hang the tyre carrier on the support rod and tighten the bolt in the hole above the rear bumper to 4.4 lb-ft (6 Nm) to raise the tyre carrier.
- 15. Hook the cable and reinstall the hole cover in its original position.
- Secure the jack and tools in their original position and the flat tyre in the luggage compartment.

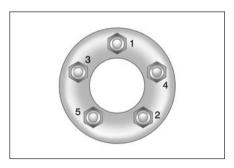


Do not store the flat tyre in the position below the rear bumper where the spare tyre was. The flat tyre can come off the position.



Do not store the jack and tools in the passenger compartment.

In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment can be thrown around the vehicle and cause personal injuries.



NOTE

The compact spare tyre is for short term use only.

Consult a workshop to replace the spare tyre with a regular tyre as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

A CAUTION

When using the jack, the vehicle could become unstable and move, damaging the vehicle and causing personal injury.

- Use jack supplied at correct jacking position.
- When installing the jack for lifting the vehicle, it should be perpendicular to the ground.
- Do not go under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start vehicle while jacked-up.
- Before jacking, get all passengers out of the vehicle and clear of vehicle and other traffic.
- Use jack only for changing wheels.
- Do not jack the vehicle on an inclined or slippery surface.
- Use jacking position nearest to the wheel requiring changing.
- Block wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

(Continued)

A CAUTION

(Continued)

- Before jacking, ensure parking brake is on and the transaxle is set in 1st or reverse gear (M/T) or P (A/T).
- Do not jack the vehicle and change the wheel where traffic is close.

A CAUTION

Call a garage or motoring service for assistance where conditions are not satisfactory for jacking the car or if you are not confident of completing the task safely.

STARTING THE ENGINE WITH JUMPER CABLES

A CAUTION

 Do not try to start vehicle by pushing or pulling it.

This can damage catalytic converter and automatic transaxle, and may cause personal injury.

You can start vehicle that has a discharged battery by transferring electrical power to it from a battery in another vehicle.

WARNING

Batteries can explode. You could be burnt by battery acid and electrical short could injure you or damage the vehicles.

- Do not expose battery to flames or sparks.
- Do not lean over battery while jump starting vehicle.

(Continued)

WARNING

(Continued)

- Do not allow cable terminals to touch each other.
- Wear eye protection when working near any battery.
- Do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin, fabric, or painted surfaces.
- Make sure battery providing jump start has the same voltage as the battery receiving the jump.
- Do not disconnect discharged battery from vehicle.

Failure to follow these precautions or the following instructions for starting an engine with jumper cables can cause battery to explode, resulting in burns from battery acid, or electrical short circuit.

This can create damage to electrical systems in both vehicles, and cause serious personal injury.

Before jump starting

- 1. Apply parking brake.
- 2. For a vehicle with automatic transaxle, shift to PARK, and for manual transaxle, shift to NEUTRAL.
- 3. Switch off all electrical accessories.

A CAUTION

 Turn audio system off before jump starting your vehicle. Otherwise you may damage audio system.

WARNING

 Always route jumper cables so they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

Otherwise you may damage vehicle and cause serious injury.

Attaching jumper cables

To jump start your vehicle, connect the jumper cables in the following order:

- Connect one end of the first jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery providing the jump start (identified by "+" sign on the battery case or terminal).
- Connect the other end of this same jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery ("+" sign).
- Connect the first end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery providing the jump start (identified by "-" sign on the battery case or terminal).

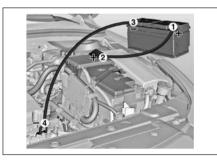
WARNING

Last connection to the vehicle to be charged should NOT be made to the negative (-) battery terminal.

- Attach the clamp for this last connection to a steel bracket bolted to the engine block.
- This last connection should be as far away from the battery as possible.

Connecting the jumper cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery could result in arcing and possibly a battery explosion.

Serious personal injury or vehicle damage can result.



- Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to ground on the other vehicle, such as a steel bracket bolted to the engine block.
- The engine of the vehicle providing the jump start can be allowed to run during the jump start.

NOTE

Attempts to start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery should be made at intervals of about one minute and should not last longer than 15 seconds each.

Once the previously discharged vehicle is running:

- Carefully disconnect the ground connection

 (-). Begin with the vehicle with the discharged battery. Leave the discharged vehicle running.
- 2. Disconnect the negative lead from vehicle providing the jump.
- 3. Disconnect the "+" lead from both batteries. Store the jumper cables with the spare tyre.
- Operate the discharged vehicle for approximately 20 minutes. This will allow the charging system to recharge your battery.
- 5. If this discharge condition reoccurs, consult a workshop. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

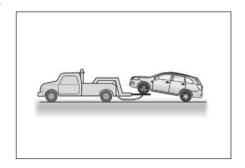
TOWING THE VEHICLE

If it is necessary to tow your vehicle, contact a workshop or a professional tow truck service. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

WARNING

- Never let passengers ride in a vehicle that is being towed.
- Never tow a vehicle faster than safe or posted speeds.
- Never tow a vehicle with damaged parts that are not fully secured on the vehicle.

Failure to observe these precautions can result in personal injury.



Towing your vehicle with a wheel lift

- 1. Turn hazard flashers on.
- 2. Turn ignition switch to ACC.
- 3. Shift either automatic or manual transaxle to NEUTRAL.
- 4. Release parking brake.

A CAUTION

If your vehicle must be towed from the rear, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

• Never tow your vehicle from the rear with the front wheels on the road.

Towing your vehicle with the front wheels on the road can cause severe damage to your vehicle transaxle.

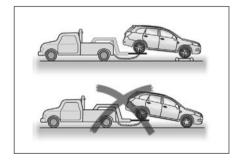
5. Tow the vehicle with the front wheels off **Towing the vehicle with all wheel drive** the road.

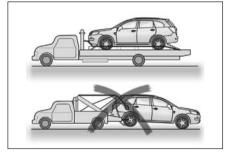
A CAUTION

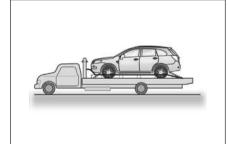
- Do not use sling-type equipment to tow the vehicle.
- Use flat bed or wheel lift equipment.

system

Flat-bed equipment is the best method of towing the vehicle to be equipped with all wheel drive (AWD) system to avoid any damages.







If not available to use a flat-bed equipment, use a towing dolly to tow the vehicle as illustrated below.

A CAUTION

If you tow the vehicle equipped with the all wheel drive (AWD) system while front or rear tyres are rolling on the road, the drive system in the vehicle could be severely damaged.

• Never tow your vehicle with the front and rear tyres on the road.

EMERGENCY TOWING

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed by a cable secured to the emergency towing eye.

Front Towing Eye

The front towing eye is provided under the front bumper. Remove air dam of left side and attach towing eye. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced road for a short distance and at low speeds.

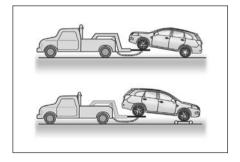
Also the wheels, axles, drive train, steering and brakes must be all in a good condition.

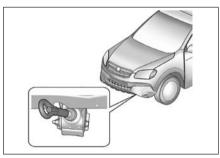
A CAUTION

When towing the vehicle with a tow rope, the vehicle can be damaged.

To reduce damage:

- Use towing eye only if no other towing equipment is available.
- Only tow the vehicle from the front.
- Keep tow rope clear of bumper.
- Ensure tow rope is securely fixed to towing eye, at both ends. Check by pulling on tow rope.
- Towing with a tow rope could cause severe automatic transaxle damage.
 When towing vehicle with automatic transaxle, use flat bed or wheel lift equipment.
- Drive off slowly and avoid jerky movements.





WARNING

When towing with a tow rope, control of towed vehicle can be lost.

- Do not tow if the wheels, transaxle, axles, steering or brakes are damaged.
- Do not remove the key from the ignition switch as this will lock the steering and this will make the vehicle undriveable.

A CAUTION

• Do not use transport tie-down hook to tow your vehicle.

The vehicle could be damaged.

Rear Towing Eye Attachment

When towing another vehicle, use the rear towing eye attachment. It should be used only in an emergency situation. (for example, to pull the vehicle out of a ditch, a snow bank, or mud.)

To use the rear towing eye attachment, do the following:

- Find the rear towing eye attachment below the floor cover in the luggage compartment.
- 2. Open the cover on the rear bumper and screw the towing eye attachment firmly in place.

When the rear towing eye attachment is used, always pull the cable or chain in a straight direction with respect to the eye. Do not apply force to the hook from any side direction. To prevent damage, do not take up slack in the cable too quickly.



• Do not use transport tie-down hook to tow another vehicle.

The vehicle could be damaged.



ROCKING YOUR VEHICLE

If stuck in snow, mud or other loose surfaces, the procedure below may allow you to free your vehicle.

- Turn the steering wheel fully left then right.
 This will clear the area around your front tyres.
- 2. Shift back and forth between R and a forward gear.
- 3. Spin the wheels as little as possible.
- 4. Release the accelerator pedal while you shift.
- 5. Press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transaxle is in gear.

If that doesn't release your vehicle after a few tries, your vehicle may need to be towed. Refer to "TOWING THE VEHICLE" earlier in this section.

WARNING

If you rock your vehicle to make it out when it becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, or etc.;

 First check that there is no physical object or people around the vehicle.

During operation, the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

NOTE

If you rock your vehicle, observe the following precautions to prevent damage to the transaxle and other parts;

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal while shifting or before the transaxle is completely shifted to forward or reverse.
- Do not race the engine and avoid spinning the wheels.
- If your vehicle remains stuck after rocking the vehicle several times, consider other ways such as towing.

OVERHEATING

If the engine coolant temperature gauge pointer is in the red area, or if you have any other reason to suspect the engine may be overheating:

- 1. Stop the vehicle.
- 2. Turn off the air conditioning.
- 3. Let the engine idle for a few minutes.
- 4. Be sure the cooling fan is operating.

WARNING

If steam is visible, move away from vehicle until engine is cool. Steam can cause serious burns.

NOTE

Using A/C while driving up long hills or in heavy traffic can cause the engine overheating.

If the fan is not operating and steam is visible, perform the following:

- 1. Turn off engine.
- 2. Move away from vehicle without opening the bonnet.
- 3. Allow engine to cool.
- 4. When steam is no longer visible, carefully open bonnet.
- Consult a workshop as soon as possible. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

If the fan is operating and steam is not visible, perform the following:

- 1. Carefully open the bonnet.
- 2. Idle engine until cool.
- 3. Check coolant level.

If the fan is operating, but engine temperature does not fall, perform the following:

- 1. Stop the engine.
- 2. Carefully open the bonnet.
- 3. Allow the engine to cool.
- 4. Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is low, check for leaks for following components:

- 1. Radiator.
- 2. Radiator hoses.
- 3. Radiator connections.
- 4. Heater hoses.
- 5. Heater hose connections.
- 6. Water pump.

If you find a leak or other damage, or if the coolant is still leaking, consult a workshop immediately. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer. Do not drive the vehicle until these problems have been solved.

WARNING

Scalding hot coolant steam could be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious injury.

• Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when engine and radiator are hot.

5 SERVICE AND VEHICLE CARE

•	SAFETY PRECAUTIONS 6-	-2
•	DRIVER'S CHECK LIST 6-	-4
•	ENGINE COMPARTMENT 6-	-5
•	ENGINE OIL 6-	-8
•	COOLANT 6-1	13
•	BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID 6-1	15
•	TRANSAXLE FLUID 6-1	17
•	POWER STEERING FLUID 6-1	17
•	WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID 6-1	18
•	WINDSCREEN WIPERS 6-1	19

•	AIR CLEANER	6-20
•	BATTERY	6-2
•	BRAKE PEDAL	6-2
•	DIESEL PARTICULATE FICTER(DPF)	6-2
,	WHEELS AND TYRES	6-24
•	AIR CONDITIONER FILTER	6-29
•	FUSES	6-30
•	LAMPS	6-30
•	VEHICLE CARE	6-40

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

When performing any inspection or maintenance work on your vehicle, take precautions to reduce the risk of personal injury or damage

General precautions to observe when performing vehicle service:

• Do not work on the engine while it is hot.

WARNING

The catalytic converter and other exhaust components while engine is running can get very hot.

Touching the related parts while engine is running can result in severe burns.

- Never get under the vehicle while it is supported by a jack. If it is necessary to work under the vehicle, use safety stands.
- Keep smoking materials, flames, and sparks away from the battery, all fuel, and fuel-related parts.

- Never connect or disconnect the battery or any transistorized components while the ignition switch is ON.
- When connecting the battery cables, pay special attention to their polarities. Never connect a positive cable to a negative terminal, or a negative cable to a positive terminal.
- Remember that the battery, ignition cables, and your vehicle wiring carry high current or voltage. Be careful not to cause a short circuit.

WARNING

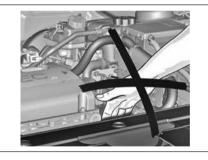
 Turn ignition OFF and remove the key from the ignition before checking or working under bonnet.

Touching live parts while ignition is ON can result in shock or burns.

WARNING

If you must reach into the engine compartment, remove loose clothing and jewellery that can become caught, and avoid placing body parts near the fan, belts, or other moving parts.

- Make sure there is proper ventilation whenever you have the engine running in an enclosed space such as a garage.
- Keep used oil, coolant, and other fluids out of reach of children and pets.
- Do not dispose of empty oil and fluid containers, or those containing used oil or fluid, with your household waste. Use only locally authorised automotive waste disposal facilities.



- If it is necessary to check under the bonnet while the engine is running, take care to avoid unexpected and sudden movements of your vehicle. With an automatic transaxle, place selector lever in PARK or NEUTRAL and apply parking brake. For a manual transaxle, place the shift lever in neutral and apply the parking brake firmly.
- · To avoid the possibility of personal injury, always turn the ignition off and remove the key before working under the bonnet, unless the procedure specifically requires to do so. If the procedure requires you to work under the bonnet while the engine is running, remove loose clothing and jewellery that can become caught in moving parts and cause personal injury.

Engine compartment cooling fan

A CAUTION

The electric cooling fans (in the engine compartment) are controlled by sensors. These fans may come on at any time.

• It is important to keep hands, fingers, and any loose articles clear of the fan blades.

To avoid possible injury from the cooling fan, switch off the engine so the fan is not operating before you perform any engine checks.

Also, be aware that the electronic ignition system has a higher voltage than conventional systems. Therefore, it is highly dangerous to touch live parts when your vehicle's ignition is ON.

WARNING

Touching live parts of your vehicle when the ignition is ON is highly dangerous.

· Make sure you turn the ignition off and remove the key before you make any engine checks or perform other maintenance under the bonnet.

It can result in burns, shocks, or other personal injuries.

6-4 SERVICE AND VEHICLE CARE

DRIVER'S CHECK LIST

To maintain safe and dependable operation of your vehicle, periodically check the exterior, interior, and engine compartment.

EXTERIOR

Tyres

- Properly inflated. (See "WHEELS AND TYRES" in the index)
- · No cracks on sidewall or tread.
- · No foreign objects in tread.

Wheels

 Nuts and bolts should be tightened to correct torque figure. (See "HOW TO CHANGE A FLAT TYRE" in the index)

Lamps

 Operation of all running, head, tail, side markers, turn signals, brake and fog lamps.

Fluids

• Check correct fill level of all fluid reservoirs under bonnet.

Windscreen wipers

• Inspect condition of arms and rubber inserts (including rear wiper).

INTERIOR

Steering

 Check for excessive looseness (free play) in steering wheel.

Parking brake

Make sure parking brake lever travel is appropriate.

Instrument panel

 Check proper operations of all instrument panel gauges, controls, and warning lamps.

Mirrors

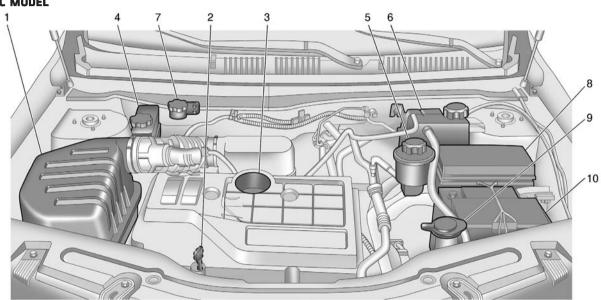
- Be sure the reflective surface of all three mirrors is in good condition and clean.
- Check for ability to easily re-adjust all mirrors.

Controls

· Check for correct play on brake pedal.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

2.4 DOHC MODEL



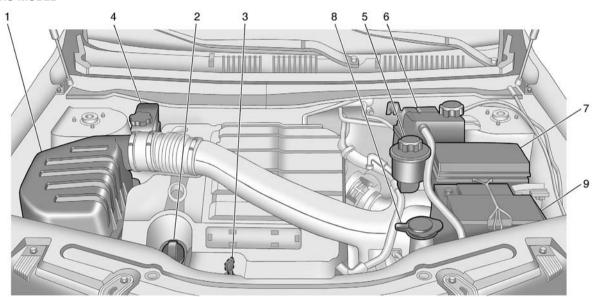
- 1. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter
- 2. Engine Oil Dipstick
- 3. Engine Oil Fill Cap
- 4. Brake Fluid Reservoir

- 5. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
- 6. Engine Coolant Surge Tank
- 7. Clutch Fluid Reservoir

- 8. Engine Compartment Fuse Block
- 9. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir
- 10. Battery

^{*} The engine room in the vehicle may differ from the inllustration.

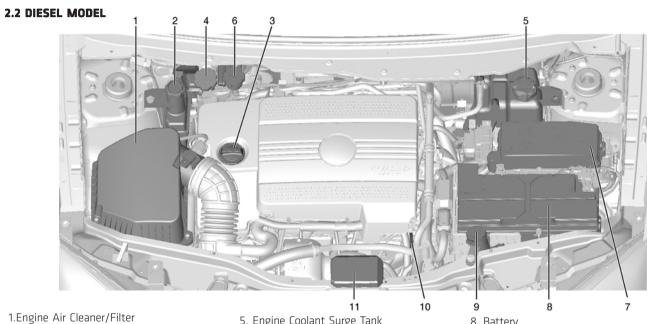
3.0 DOHC MODEL



- 1. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter
- 2. Engine Oil Fill Cap
- 3. Engine Oil Dipstick

- 4. Brake Fluid Reservoir
- 5. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
- 6. Engine Coolant Surge Tank
- * The engine room in the vehicle may differ from the inllustration.

- 7. Engine Compartment Fuse Block
- 8. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir
- 9. Battery



- 2. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
- 3. Engine Oil Fill Cap
- 4. Brake Fluid Reservoir

- 5. Engine Coolant Surge Tank
- 6. Clutch Fluid Reservoir
- 7.Engine Compartment Fuse Block
- 8. Battery
- 9. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir
- 10. Engine Oil Dipstick
- 11. Auxiliary Fuse Block

^{*} The engine room in the vehicle may differ from the inllustration.

6-8 SERVICE AND VEHICLE CARE

ENGINE OIL

Keep your engine properly lubricated by keeping the engine oil at the correct level.

It is normal for an engine to consume some engine oil.

Check the oil level at regular intervals such as every time you stop for fuel.

In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

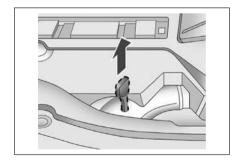
CHECKING ENGINE OIL LEVEL

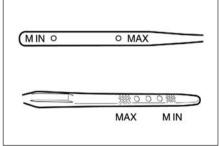
- 1. Park vehicle on level ground.
- 2. Turn off the engine and give the oil 10 minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If this is not done, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
- 3. Pull out the dipstick and wipe it clean. See "ENGINE COMPARTMENT" on a previous page in this section for more information on location.
- 4. Re-insert dipstick completely.
- 5. Pull the dipstick out again.

- 6. Check the oil on the dipstick to make sure it is not contaminated.
- 7. Check oil level, as shown on the dipstick.
 Oil should be between MIN and MAX

If oil level is not clear, read the opposite side of gauge instead.

Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.





8. If the oil level is below MIN, add enough oil of the same grade as is currently in the engine to raise the oil level to MAX. Do not fill over MAX mark.

The engine oil filler cap is where you add oil. See "ENGINE COMPARTMENT" on a previous page in this section for more information on location.

See "FLUID CHART" in the index for oil specification.



Engine oil is an irritant and, if ingested, can cause illness or death.

- · Keep out of reach of children.
- Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.
- Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

WARNING

Adding too much oil can affect engine operation.

Do not allow oil to go above MAX mark on dipstick.

Overfilling reservoir can damage your vehicle by:

- Increasing oil consumption.
- · Fouling spark plugs.
- Building excessive carbon deposits in the engine.

CHANGING ENGINE OIL AND FILTER

WARNING

Before attempting to do the work, be sure you are fully acquainted with doing this job.

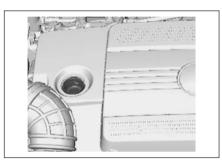
 Have a workshop do this work if you are not confident of completing the task safely. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

Otherwise, you could be injured or damage the vehicle.

Engine oil looses its ability to lubricate when contaminated. Be sure to change your engine oil according to maintenance schedule.

Be sure to replace the engine oil filter each time you change engine oil.

Under severe conditions, change oil and oil filter more frequently than is recommended in the standard maintenance schedule.



Severe conditions include, but are not limited to:

- Frequent cold starts.
- Considerable travel in stop-and-go traffic.
- Frequent short trips.
- Frequent driving when outside temperature remains below freezing.
- · Prolonged idling.
- · Frequent low-speed driving.
- Driving in dusty areas.

WARNING

Engine oil and its containers can be hazardous to your health.

- Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with engine oil.
- Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or hand cleaner after handling engine oil. Also keep this and other toxic materials out of the reach of children.

Engine oil can irritate the skin and can cause illness and even death if swallowed.

A CAUTION

Use of unauthorised or low quality engine oil or chemical engine treatments (additives) can damage the engine.

 Consult a workshop before attempting to use additives. We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

A CAUTION

- Do not dispose of used engine oil and filter with your household waste.
- Use your local, authorised waste management facility.

Used engine oil and filter contain harmful elements that may be unhealthy to you and threat to the environment.

SELECTING THE RIGHT ENGINE OIL

Use and ask for engine oils with the dexos™ certification mark. Oils meeting the requirements of the vehicle should have the dexos certification mark on the container.

This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved to the dexos specification.



This vehicle was filled at the factory with dexos-approved engine oil.

A CAUTION

Use only engine oil that is approved to the dexos specification or an equivalent engine oil of the appropriate viscosity grade. Engine oils approved to the dexos specification will show the dexos symbol on the container. Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are unsure whether the oil is approved to the dexos specification, ask your service provider.

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for the vehicle. SAE 0W-30, 0W-40, or 5W-40 can also be used. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40, or 20W-50.

In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below -29°C (-20°F), an SAE 0W-30 oil should be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, be sure to always select oil that meets the required specification.

ENGINE OIL LIFE SYSTEM

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions, engine temperature and mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A change engine oil lamp displays. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1,000 km (600 miles). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5,000 km (3,000 miles) since the last oil change.

After you change the oil, the oil life monitor will need to be reset. See your authorised Chevrolet repairer for service.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates when to change your engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Anytime your oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required.

To reset the engine oil life system, do one of the following:

· Using the scan tool

Your authorised repairer will reset the system using scan tool after changing the engine oil. Consult a workshop. We recommend your Chevrolet authorised repairer.

Using accelerator pedal

Petrol engine

- Turn the ignition key to ON/START with the engine off.
- 2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.
- 3. Turn the key to LOCK.

If the change engine oil lamp comes back on and stays on when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

Diesel engine

- Remove key from ignition switch for more than one minute. Then turn on ignition key (do not start engine).
- 2. Perform the following procedure:
 - 1) Press the accelerator pedal to the floor and hold it on the floor for 2 seconds.
 - 2) Release the accelerator pedal and take your foot off of the pedal for 2 seconds.
 - 3) Repeat this sequence (1, 2) two more times (for a total of three times) within one minute.

If the change engine oil lamp comes back on and stays on when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

A CAUTION

Remember to reset the engine oil life system whenever the engine oil is changed.

RECOMMENDED ENGINE OIL AND MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

Recommended engine oil

See "FLUID CHART" in the index for recommended engine oil and capacity.

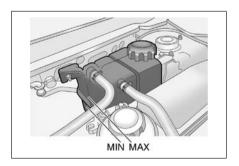
Maintenance schedule

See "SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES" in the index.

COOLANT

In the correct mixture, this coolant provides the cooling and heating system with excellent protection against corrosion and freezing.

When the engine is cool, the coolant level should be between the MIN and MAX mark on the coolant reservoir. The level of coolant rises as the engine warms and drops back as the engine cools.



A CAUTION

Plain water or the wrong mixture can damage the cooling system.

- Do not use plain water, alcohol or methanol antifreeze in coolant system.
- Use only 56:44 mix of demineralised water and proper antifreeze specified for use with your vehicle.

The engine may overheat or even catch fire.

If the coolant level falls below the MIN mark, refill the radiator with 56:44 mix of demineralised water and correct antifreeze.

In order to protect your vehicle in extremely cold weather, use mix of 48 percent water and 52 percent antifreeze.

COOLANT CONCENTRATION

Climate	Antifreeze(%)	Water(%)
Average area	44%	56%
Extremely cold area	52%	48%

WARNING

Scalding hot coolant and steam could be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious injury.

 Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine and radiator are hot.

A CAUTION

Coolant can be hazardous material.

- Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with coolant.
- Clean your skin and nails with soap and water after coming in contact with coolant.
- Keep out of reach of children.
- Coolant can irritate the skin and can cause illness or death if swallowed.

COOLANT SPECIFICATION AND MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

Coolant specification

See "FLUID CHART" in the index for recommended coolant and capacity.

Maintenance schedule

See "SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES" in the index.

A CAUTION

It is not needed to add coolant more frequently than the recommended interval. If you are adding coolant often, this may be a sign that your engine needs maintenance.

Contact a workshop for a check of the cooling system. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID

Your vehicle has reservoirs for the brake and clutch fluid.

Brake/clutch fluid can absorb moisture. Excessive moisture in the fluid may reduce the effectiveness of the hydraulic brake/clutch system. Change the fluid according to this manual to prevent hydraulic system corrosion.

Use only brake/clutch fluid recommended by us. Keep reservoir filled to the proper level. Do not allow the level to fall below MIN mark or to raise beyond the MAX mark.

A low fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir can be either an indication of a leak in the brake system or a normal indication caused by usual brake pad wear. Consult a workshop to determine if the system needs repair and add fluid after work is done on your hydraulic brake system if it is required. We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

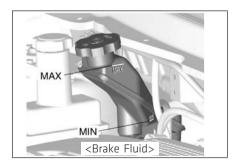
When your brake fluid drops to low level, the brake system warning lamp ((a)) will come on. See "BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING LAMP" in the index.

ADDING BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID

1. Thoroughly wipe away dirt from around the fluid reservoir cap.

A CAUTION

 Make sure you thoroughly clean around the brake/clutch fluid reservoir cap before removing the cap.
 Contamination of the brake/clutch fluid system can affect system performance, leading to costly repairs.

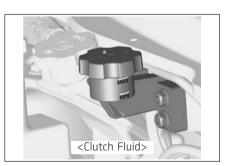


- 2. Unscrew the filler cap.
- 3. Use the correct recommended brake/ clutch fluid to fill the reservoir to the MAX mark. Be careful not to spill the fluid on painted surfaces. If this happens, use cold water to wash the affected area immediately.

A CAUTION

An overflow of brake/clutch fluid on the engine may cause the fluid to burn.

• Do not overfill the reservoir. An engine fire can cause personal injuries and damage your vehicle and other property.



4. Reinstall the reservoir cap.

A CAUTION

- Do not dispose of used brake/clutch fluid with your household waste.
- · Use your local, authorised waste management facility.

Used brake/clutch fluid and their containers are hazardous. They can damage your health and the environment.

A CAUTION

Brake/clutch fluid is harsh and can irritate skin and eves.

• Do not allow the brake/clutch fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If it does, immediately wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water, or hand cleaner.

RECOMMENDED BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID AND MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

Recommended brake/clutch fluid

See "FLUID CHART" in the index for recommended brake/clutch fluid and capacity.

Maintenance schedule

See "SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES" in the index.

TRANSAXLE FLUID

It is not necessary to check the transaxle fluid level. A transaxle fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take your vehicle to the dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

See "FLUID CHART" in the index for recommended transaxle fluid.

NOTE

Use of the incorrect transaxle fluid may damage the vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use the transaxle fluid listed in "FLUID CHART".

POWER STEERING FLUID

CHECKING POWER STEERING FLUID LEVEL

Regularly check power steering fluid level.

The power steering fluid reservoir is located next to the engine room fuse block.

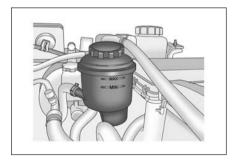
A CAUTION

 Do not operate vehicle without the required amount of power steering fluid.

To do so can damage power steering system of your vehicle, leading to costly repairs.

- 1. Turn the engine off.
- Check the fluid level. It should be between MIN and MAX on the reservoir.

If level drops to or below MIN, add fluid as specified in this manual.



ADDING POWER STEERING FLUID

- 1. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
- 2. Unscrew the cap.
- Add the power steering fluid. Be sure to maintain the level between MIN and MAX mark.
- 4. Replace the cap.

A CAUTION

An overflow of the fluid may cause the fluid to burn or discolour paintwork.

Do not overfill the reservoir.
 An engine fire can cause personal injuries and damage your vehicle and other property.

RECOMMENDED POWER STEERING FLUID AND MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

Recommended power steering fluid

See "FLUID CHART" in the index for recommended power steering fluid and capacity.

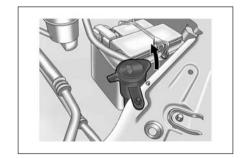
Maintenance schedule

See "SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES" in the index.

WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID

Before you drive, make sure the windscreen washer fluid reservoir is at the appropriate level and filled with the correct solution.

The low windscreen washer fluid warning lamp comes on when the washer fluid reservoir is approaching low. When it comes on, add washer fluid at your earliest opportunity. See "LOW WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID WARNING LAMP" in the index.



In cold weather, do not fill the windscreen washer fluid reservoir more than three quarters full.

Washer fluid can freeze to expand in cold temperatures. Filling the reservoir too much does not allow enough expansion room to prevent possible damage to the reservoir.

NOTE

To refill windscreen washer fluid reservoir:

- Use only commercially available readyto-use washer fluid for that purpose.
- Do not use tap water. Minerals present in tap water may plug the windscreen washer lines.
- If air temperature is likely to go below freezing, use windscreen washer fluid which has sufficient anti-freezing property.

A CAUTION

 Do not put water or radiator antifreeze in windscreen washer reservoir.

Water can allow solution to freeze. Frozen solution can damage windscreen washer system.

Radiator antifreeze can damage windscreen washer system and vehicle paint.

WINDSCREEN WIPERS

Properly functioning windscreen wipers are essential for clear vision and safe driving. Regularly check the condition of the wiper blades. Replace hard, brittle or cracked blades or those that smear dirt on the windscreen.

Foreign material on the windscreen or wiper blades can reduce the effectiveness of the wipers. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the windscreen and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent. Rinse them thoroughly with water. Repeat the process, if necessary.

There is no way to remove traces of silicone from glass. Therefore, never apply polish with silicone to your vehicle's windscreen or you will get streaks which will impair the driver's vision.

Do not use solvents, petrol, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean wipers. These are harsh and can damage the blades and painted surfaces.

REPLACING WIPER BLADES

- 1. Press and hold the wiper blade retaining clip.
- 2. Pull the wiper blade off the wiper arm.
- 3. Install a new wiper blade onto the arm.

AIR CLEANER

engine.

Regularly inspect and change the air cleaner element according to the service schedule in the index.

A CAUTION

The engine needs clean air to operate properly.

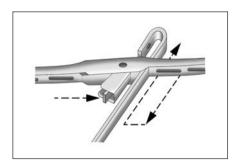
 Do not operate your vehicle without the air cleaner element installed.

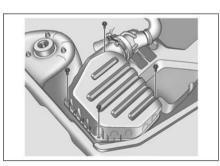
Driving without the air cleaner element properly installed can damage your

CLEANING THE AIR CLEANER

If the air cleaner element is dirty, you may try to clean it as follows:

- 1. Shake the air cleaner element to remove surface dust.
- 2. Clean the inside of the air cleaner housing.
- 3. Cover the open filter housing with a damp cloth while cleaning the element.
- 4. Clean air filter element by blowing compressed air through it in the direction opposite normal airflow.





MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

See "SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES" in the index.

BATTERY

Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery.

WARNING

Battery acid can cause severe burns, explode, and damage paint.

- Avoid skin and clothing contact with battery acid.
- Keep flames, sparks and smoking materials away from battery.

CLEANING THE BATTERY TERMINALS

- 1. Turn the ignition OFF and remove the key from the ignition key slot.
- Use a spanner to loosen and remove the battery cable clamps from the terminals. Always disconnect the negative (-) terminal first.
- 3. Use a wire brush or a terminal cleaning tool to clean the terminals.
- 4. Check the battery terminals for white or bluish powder, which are signs of corrosion.
- Remove any corrosion with a solution of baking soda and water. The baking sodaand-water solution will bubble and turn brown.
- 6. When the bubbling stops, wash the solution off with plain water and dry the battery with a cloth or paper towel.
- Reconnect and tighten the positive (+) terminal, then the negative (-) terminal. Always reconnect the negative terminal (-) last.

A CAUTION

- When reconnecting the cable to the battery, be careful to ensure the clamps are fully seated, then tighten the retaining bolts so the clamps will not vibrate loose.
- Be sure to attach the red cable to the positive (+) battery terminal and the black cable to the negative (-) battery terminal.

Connecting the vehicle's battery cables to the wrong terminals can result in personal injuries and damage to your vehicle and other property.

8. Coat the terminals with petroleum jelly or terminal grease to help prevent future corrosion.

NOTE

Be sure to keep in mind that the positive terminal (+) is first when connecting, and the negative terminal (-) is first when disconnecting.

BATTERY MAINTENANCE

To extend the life of your vehicle's battery, be sure to do the following:

- Keep the battery mounted securely.
- · Keep the top of the battery clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Immediately rinse off any spilled electrolyte using a solution of water and baking soda.
- If your vehicle will not be used for an extended time, disconnect the cable from the negative (-) terminal.
- Charge a disconnected battery every six weeks.

NOTE

Batteries contain toxic material. Used batteries can be hazardous to health and environment.

 Do not dispose of the battery with household waste. Use locally authorised automotive waste disposal facilities only.

BRAKE PEDAL

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER(DPF)

The diesel particle filter system filters harmful soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving. The filter is cleaned by burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take 10 up to 25 minutes. The fuel consumption may be higher during this period. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.

Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically.

If the filter requires cleaning or previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, DPF indicator illuminates or flashes. Continue driving, keeping engine speed above 2000 revolutions per minute (Shift down if necessary.) until the indicator goes off. The indicator will go off as soon as the self-cleaning operation is complete.

Stopping the journey or switching off the engine during cleaning is not recommended.

A CAUTION

If the cleaning process is interrupted more than once, there is a risk of provoking severe engine damage.

Cleaning takes place quickest at high engine speeds and loads.

DPF indicator extinguishes as soon as the selfcleaning operation is complete.

WARNING

Be sure the following precautions are taken because the exhaust parts are raised to high temperature during regeneration of DPF.

- Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Do not place your vehicle over papers, leaves, dry grass or other things that can burn.
- Turn the ignition OFF as soon as your vehicle enters a garage.
- Do not go near the hot exhaust parts including exhaust tail pipe.

WHEELS AND TYRES

Factory-fitted tyres are matched to your vehicle, offering the most effective combination of ride comfort, tread life and performance.

A CAUTION

Use of unsuitable tyres and/or wheels may lead to a collision.

 Consult a workshop before you change your original tyres or wheels.

This can result in personal injuries and damage to your vehicle or other property. We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

MAINTENANCE

M WARNING

- Never overload your vehicle.
- Always drive with properly inflated tyres.
- Always check tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are cold (ambient temperature).

Maintaining tyres at pressure specified in this manual will ensure the most effective combination of driving comfort, safety and performance.

Use an accurate tyre pressure gauge to check the pressure of tyres when they are cold. Securely retighten the valve caps after checking tyre inflation pressure.

NOTE

Check inflation pressure when tyres are cold. Warm tyres produce inaccurate readings. Tyres can become warm after you have driven more than one mile (1.6km) and stay warm for up to three hours after vehicle has been sitting.

See "VEHICLE SPECIFICATION" in the index for correct tyre inflation pressure.

Tyre condition should be inspected before driving and tyre pressure should be checked each time you fill your fuel tank or at least once a month using a tyre pressure gauge.

Incorrect tyre inflation pressures will:

- Increase tyre wear.
- Impair vehicle handling and safe operation.
- Affect ride comfort.
- Reduce fuel economy.

If tyre pressures are too low, tyres can overheat and suffer internal damage, tread separation, and even a blowout at high speeds. Even if you later adjust the inflation pressure of your tyres, previous driving with low pressure may have damaged the tyres.

Caring for your tyres and wheels

Driving over sharp objects can damage the tyres and wheels. If some objects are unavoidable, drive over them slowly and at a right angle, if possible.

When parking, avoid making contact with the curb.

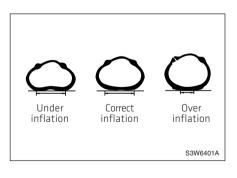
Periodic tyre inspection

- · Visual damage.
- · Foreign objects.
- · Punctures.
- Cuts.
- Cracks.
- Bulges in the sidewalls.

Check the wheels for damage.

Tyre defects including those above can cause loss of control of your vehicle, resulting in a possible collision.

If your tyres or wheels are damaged or show abnormal wear, consult a workshop. We recommend your authorised Chevrolet repairer.



Your vehicle was delivered with radial tyres. We recommend using radials of the same size, design, tread wear, temperature and speed rating at time of replacement.

WARNING

Mixing tyres could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tyres of different sizes or types, the vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tyres of different sizes may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the same size and type tyres on all wheels.

NOTE

In certain engine types, when you replace your tyre to tyres of a size different from originally fitted to your vehicle, it is necessary to feed the specification of the replaced tyre into the ECM using scan tool.

Consult a workshop when you replace your original tyres. We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

BUILT-IN TREAD WEAR INDICATOR

Regularly check the tread depth of your tyres using the tyre's built-in tread wear indicators. Markings on the sidewalls indicate the locations of the tread wear indicators.

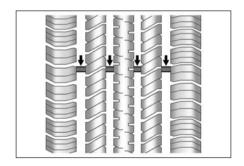
A CAUTION

Do not drive on worn or damaged tyres.
 Such tyres can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and a collision, resulting in injuries or damage to your vehicle or other property.

Replace tyres when the tread wear indicators become visible. The wear indicators appear between the tread grooves when the tread depth is 1.6 mm (0.06 in) or less.

NOTE

Always dispose of worn tyres according to local environmental regulation.



TYRE ROTATION

Normally, the front tyres will wear faster than rear tyres. To prolong the life of your tyres and avoid uneven tread wear:

- 1. Should the front tyres show greater wear than the rear tyres, rotate tyres using the rotation pattern shown below.
- 2. Maintain correct tyre pressure.
- 3. Check tightening of the lug nuts/bolts.

See "HOW TO CHANGE A FLAT TYRE" in the index.



 Use the recommended wheels and wheel lug nuts/bolts only.

Otherwise, you can lose control of your vehicle and cause a collision that can result in injuries or damage to your vehicle or other property.

For reasons of safety, tyres should be replaced when their tread depth has worn down to 2 to 3 mm (winter tyres: 4 mm).

WINTER TYRES



A CAUTION

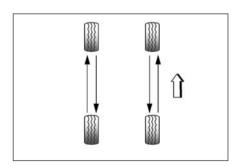
If you choose to install winter tyres on your vehicle, be sure to only use winter tyres that are recommended by by a workshop. We recommend your authorized Chevrolet repairer.

Using the wrong winter tyres may adversely affect Stability System performance.

See your authorised Chevrolet repairer for details regarding winter tyre availability and proper tyre selection.

If you decide to use winter tyres:

- · Use them on all four wheels.
- · Never exceed the maximum speed specified by the tyre manufacturer.
- Always use the tyre pressure specified by the tyre manufacturer.



TYRE CHAINS

Before fitting chains, remove wheel covers (if so equipped) to avoid scratching them.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instructions
- Only use tyre chains on the front tyre of 16 inch size. Do not use chains on the other tyre size.
- Re-tighten the chains after driving about 0.5 mile (about 1.0km)

A CAUTION

Use of snow chains could adversely affect vehicle handling.

- Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
- · Avoid sharp turns, bumps and holes.
- Avoid locked-wheel braking.

NOTE

- SAE class S-type chains are the proper type for your vehicle.
- Always drive slowly when you are using tyre chains.
- If you hear the chains contacting the vehicle, stop and re-tighten the chains.
- If the contact continues, slow down until it stops.

TEMPORARY SPARE TYRE

Although the temporary spare tyre was fully inflated when your vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

See "VEHICLE SPECIFICATION" in the index for correct inflation pressure.

When you drive your vehicle equipped with the temporary spare tyre, the vehicle speed must not exceed up to 80 km/h (50 mph).

This spare tyre is for temporary emergency use only. Replace with the regular tyre as soon as possible.

A CAUTION

When the temporary spare tyre is installed, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The temporary spare tyre can get caught on the rails. That can damage the tyre and wheel, and maybe other parts of your vehicle.

Do not use the temporary spare on other vehicles. And do not mix the temporary spare tyre or wheel with other wheels or tyres. They will not fit. Keep the spare tyre and its wheel together.

A CAUTION

 Do not use tyre chains on the temporary spare tyre. They will not fit properly.

Using tyre chains on the temporary spare tyre will damage both the vehicle and the chains.

AIR CONDITIONER FILTER

The filter removes dust, pollen and many other airborne irritants from outside air which is drawn in by your heat and ventilation system.

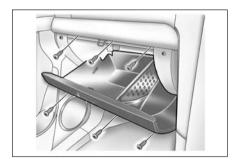
A CAUTION

Driving with clogged filter element can overheat the blower motor and damage it.

 Replace filter at the intervals specified in the section, "SCHEDULED MAIN-TENANCE SERVICES".

FILTER REPLACEMENT

- 1. Remove the six screws from around the glove box.
- 2. Remove the glove box by gently pulling at the bottom.



6-30 SERVICE AND VEHICLE CARE

3. Remove the filter cover screw.

4. Replace the air conditioner filter.

A CAUTION

Your hands could be hurt by sharp materials around the filter housing.

• Be sure to wear protective gloves when replacing air conditioner filter.

NOTE

When inserting new filter, make sure they are inserted to the correct airflow.

FUSES

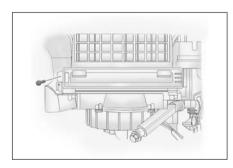
To replace a fuse:

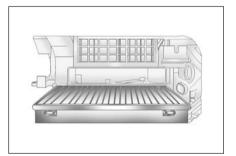
- 1. Open the fuse cover.
- 2. Identify the defective fuse by its melted element.
- 3. Remove blown fuse with the fuse puller. The fuse puller is located in the engine room fuse box.

A CAUTION

 Do not use tools that can conduct electricity when removing a blown fuse. Use only provided fuse puller.

Using metal objects can cause a short circuit, damage to the electrical system, or start a fire. Serious injury could occur.





- 4. Determine what caused the fuse to blow, and repair that problem.
- Install a new fuse of the rating specified in this manual. (See fuse block layout later in this section)

A CAUTION

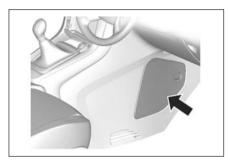
Using a fuse substitute or a fuse of the wrong type or rating can damage the electrical system or even start a fire.

 Use only specified fuse and do not use a different type or rating other than specified in this manual.

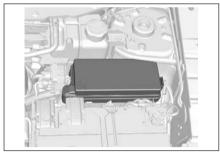
Such use can result in personal injuries or damage to your vehicle or other property.

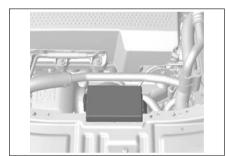
FUSE BLOCK

- Interior fuse block is located in the left side of the front passenger foot well.
- Engine room fuse block is next to the coolant reservoir.



 Auxiliary engine room fuse block (Diesel only) is located in the centre of the front panel.

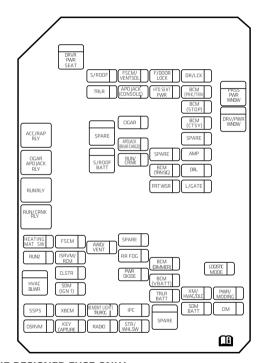




NOTE

Not all fuse block descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.

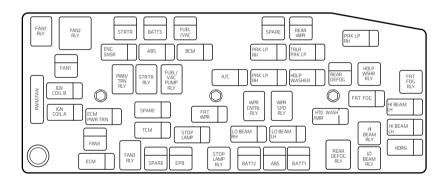
Interior fuse block



NOTICE: USE THE DESIGNED FUSE ONLY

*: OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

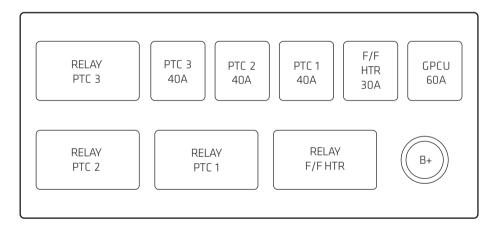
Engine room fuse block



NOTICE: USE THE DESIGNED FUSE ONLY

*: OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

Auxiliary engine room fuse block (Diesel only)



NOTICE: USE THE DESIGNED FUSE ONLY

LAMPS

WARNING

Halogen bulbs contain pressurised gas. Take special care when handling and disposing of halogen bulbs.

- Wear eye protection when working with bulbs.
- Protect the bulb from abrasions and scratches.
- When the bulb is illuminated and not in a sealed installation, protect the bulb from contact with liquids.
- Only illuminate the bulb when it is installed in a lamp.
- Replace a cracked or damaged headlamp.
- When replacing halogen bulbs, DO NOT touch the glass part with bare fingers.
- · Keep the bulbs away from children.
- Dispose of used bulbs with care.
 Otherwise the bulbs can explode.

HEADLAMPS

Bulb replacement

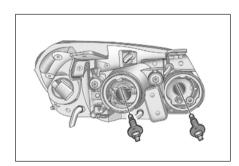
- 1. Open the bonnet.
- 2. Remove the fastener plugs that hold the radiator upper cover.
- 3. Remove the radiator upper cover.
- 4. Remove three bolts and headlamp assembly.
- 5. Remove the headlamp cap.
- 6. Release the spring that retains the bulb.
- 7. Remove the bulb.
- 8. Install the proper replacement headlamp

- bulb. See "BULB SPECIFICATIONS" in the index.
- 9. Reinstall the bulb retaining spring.
- 10. Replace the headlamp cap.
- 11. Connect the wiring harness connector.

A CAUTION

 Clean your halogen bulbs with alcohol or mineral spirits and a lint-free cloth.
 Be sure not to touch them with your bare hands.

Fingerprints may drastically shorten the effective life of halogen bulbs.



PARKING LAMPS

Bulb replacement

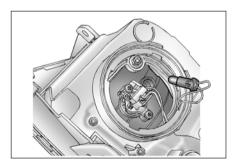
- 1. Open the bonnet.
- 2. Remove the headlamp assembly.
- 3. Remove the headlamp cap.
- 4. Pull out the bulb holder located next to the headlamp high bulb.
- 5. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of the bulb holder.
- 6. Install a new bulb, See "BULB SPECIFICATIONS" in the index.
- 7. Replace the headlamp cap in reverse order.

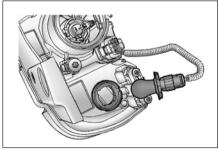
FRONT TURN SIGNAL LAMPS

Bulb replacement

- 1. Open the bonnet.
- 2. Remove the headlamp assembly.
- 3. Disconnect the wiring harness connector from the bulb holder.
- 4. Rotate the front turn signal bulb holder counterclockwise.

- 5. Pull the front turn signal bulb holder out of the lamp housing.
- 6. Press the bulb inward and rotate it counterclockwise to remove it from the bulb holder
- Install a new bulb into the holder by pressing it in and rotating it clockwise. See "BULB SPECIFICATIONS" in the index.
- 8. Install the holder into the lamp housing by rotating it clockwise.
- 9. Reinstall the headlamp assembly.





6-38 SERVICE AND VEHICLE CARE

FRONT FOG LAMPS

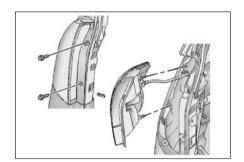
Have a bulb replaced by a workshop.

REVERSE, TAIL, BRAKE, REAR TURN SIGNAL AND REAR FOG LAMPS

Bulb replacement

- 1. Open the tailgate.
- 2. Remove two screws and the lamp assembly.
- 3. Remove the bulb holder by rotating it counterclockwise.
- Remove the bulb from the holder by pressing the bulb and rotating it counterclockwise.

- Insert a correct replacement bulb into the bulb holder. See "BULB SPECIFICATIONS" in the index.
- 6. Replace the bulb holder into the lamp housing. Twist the bulb holder clockwise to secure.
- 7. Replace the lamp housing into the vehicle using the two screws removed earlier.
- 8. Close the tailgate.



CENTER HIGH-MOUNTED STOPLAMP (CHMSL)

Have a bulb replaced by a workshop.

REGISTRATION PLATE LAMP

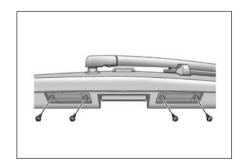
Bulb replacement

- 1. Remove two screw and the lamp cover.
- 2. To remove the bulb holder from the lamp housing, rotate the bulb holder counterclockwise.
- 3. Pull the bulb out from the bulb holder.
- 4. Replace the bulb. See "BULB SPECIFICA- 4. Reinstall the lamp lens. TIONS" in the index.
- 5. Install the bulb holder into the lamp housing by rotating the bulb holder clockwise.
- 6. Replace the lamp covers.

DOME LAMP / MAP LIGHT

Bulb replacement

- 1. Use a flat-blade screwdriver to pry the lamp lens away from the headliner.
- 2. Remove the bulb.
- 3. Replace the bulb. See "BULB SPECIFICA-TIONS" in the index.



FRONT DOOR STEP LAMP

Bulb replacement

- 1. Use a flat-blade screwdriver to pry the lamp lens away from the front door trim.
- 2. Remove the bulb.
- 3. Replace the bulb. See "BULB SPECIFICATIONS" in the index.
- 4. Reinstall the lamp lens.

VEHICLE CARE

CLEANING AGENTS

Follow the manufacturer's advice whenever you use cleaning agents or other chemicals on the inside or the outside of your vehicle.

M WARNING

Some cleaners may be poisonous, corrosive, or flammable.

 Improper use of these cleaners can be dangerous. Their use may cause personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

When cleaning the inside or outside of your vehicle, do not use hazardous cleaning solvents such as:

- Acetone.
- · Lacquer thinners.
- · Enamel reducers.
- · Nail polish removers.

When cleaning the inside or outside of your vehicle, do not use cleaning materials such as the following, except as noted in the fabric cleaning advice on stain removal:

- Laundry soaps.
- Bleaches.
- · Reducing agents.

Never use the following for any cleaning purpose:

- Carbon tetrachloride.
- Petrol.
- Benzene.
- · Naphtha.

WARNING

 Avoid overexposure to vapours from cleaning agents and other chemicals.

Such vapours can be dangerous and they may cause health problems which are more likely to occur in small, unventilated spaces. Open the doors to allow proper ventilation when you use any cleaning agents or other chemicals in the vehicle interior.

A CAUTION

Do not let non colour-fast fabrics come in contact with the interior trim of your vehicle, unless both materials are completely dry.

To avoid the possible permanent discolouration of light-coloured interior trim, do not let non colour-fast materials come into contact with seat trim unless both materials are completely dry. Following is a brief list of fabric items which may contain non colour-fast:

- · Casual clothing.
- · Coloured denim.
- · Corduroy.
- Leather.
- Suede.
- Newspaper.
- Decorative paper items.

CARE AND CLEANING OF THE INTERIOR

A CAUTION

 Make sure to use the proper cleaning techniques and materials when you clean the trim of your vehicle.

Failure to do so, especially on the first cleaning, may result in water spots, rings, and permanent stains.

These can permanently damage your vehicle.

It is very important to use the proper techniques and cleaners on the interior and exterior of your vehicle.

Use a vacuum cleaner or soft bristle brush frequently to remove dust and loose dirt that collect on the interior fabrics.

Wipe vinyl and leather trim regularly with a clean damp cloth.

Clean normal soil, spots, or stains from the trim with appropriate cleaners.

A CAUTION

If your front seats are equipped with side air bags:

- Do not saturate the seat cover with upholstery cleaner.
- Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents on the seat cover.

Failure to follow these precautions can make your side air bag modules contaminated and this can affect the performance of your side air bag in a collision.

Safety belt care



You must keep your safety belts in proper working condition to maintain their effectiveness.

Always keep the safety belts clean and dry. Avoid contamination of the safety belt webbing by polishes, oils, and chemicals, particularly battery acid, bleach or dye. These contaminants may lead to weakening of your safety belt webbing material.

Periodically inspect all parts of the safety belts. Replace damaged safety belts or components immediately.

You must replace any safety belt that has been stretched in an accident, even if the damage is not obvious or visible. Replacement safety belts must be new.

We recommend replacing the entire safety belt assembly after your vehicle has been in a collision. If a trained specialist finds that no safety belt damage has occurred in an accident, and that everything is in correct working order, then you don't have to replace the belts. We recommend that you consult your authorised Chevrolet repairer.

GLASS SURFACES



Abrasive cleaners can scratch the glass and damage the rear window defogger/heater element.

Never use abrasive cleaners on vehicle glass.

Such damage can impair the driver's vision.

Keeping the window glass clear will reduce glare and improve visibility.

A CAUTION

Decals may damage the rear window defogger.

 Never place decals on the inside of the rear window.

Such damage can impair the driver's vision.

Cleaning the outside of the windscreen

Wax or other material on the windscreen or the blade of the windscreen wiper can cause the wiper blade to chatter during operation. Such foreign materials also can make it difficult to keep your windscreen clean.

Periodically use a non-abrasive cleaner on the outside of the windscreen.

Water will not bead on a clean windscreen.

CARE AND CLEANING OF THE EXTERIOR

Washing your vehicle

The best way to preserve the finish of your vehicle is to keep it clean by washing it frequently.

- Park your car out of direct sunlight.
- Use mild soap specified for washing cars with cold or lukewarm water.
- Make sure to rinse all soaps and cleaners completely off the surface.

NOTE

• Do not use household dishwashing liquid to wash your car.

Dish soap will wash car wax off your paint.

A CAUTION

Avoid high-pressure car washes.
 They may cause water to enter your vehicle, damaging the interior.

We designed your vehicle to withstand normal environmental conditions and natural elements.

A CAUTION

Your antenna could be damaged by the automatic car wash.

- Retract your power antenna by turning the audio off.
- Remove your mast or roof antenna manually.

Polishing and waxing

Periodically polish your vehicle to remove surface residue. After polishing, protect the paint with a high quality automotive wax.

Protecting exterior bright metal parts

Clean bright metal trim parts regularly. Washing with water is all that is usually needed.

A CAUTION

 Never use an automotive or chrome polish, steam, or a caustic soap to clean or polish aluminum trim.

Such materials can be too abrasive, resulting in damage to trim and wheels.

When waxing your car, also wax all bright metal parts.

<u>Cleaning aluminum wheels and wheel</u> covers

To preserve the original appearance of the wheels and wheel covers, keep them free from road dirt and brake dust buildup.

A CAUTION

Do not use abrasive cleaners or brushes to clean aluminum wheels or wheel covers.

Clean the wheels/wheel covers regularly, avoiding abrasive cleaners or brushes that can damage the finish.

CORROSION PROTECTION

We designed your vehicle to resist corrosion. Special materials and protective finishes used on most parts of your car help maintain its good appearance, strength, and reliability.

Surface rust may appear on certain components found in the engine compartment or under the body, but will not affect the reliability or function of these components.

Sheet metal damage

If the vehicle needs body repair or replacement, make sure the repair shop applies proper anticorrosion material to restore corrosion protection. See "FINISH DAMAGE" later in this section.

Foreign material deposits

The following materials may damage painted surfaces:

- Calcium chloride and other salts.
- · Ice-melting agents.
- · Road oil and tar.
- Tree sap.
- · Bird droppings.
- · Industrial fallout.

Wash harmful materials off your vehicle promptly. If soap and water do not remove the residue, use cleaners specifically intended for this purpose.

A CAUTION

 Use only cleaners safe for use on painted surfaces.

Other cleaners may permanently damage the paint.

Finish damage

Repair stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches in the finish as soon as possible. Bare metal corrodes quickly.

You may use touch-up products to repair minor chips and scratches.

A body and paint shop can make repairs on larger areas.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal or dust control can collect on the underbody of your vehicle. Failure to remove these materials can accelerate corrosion and rust.

Periodically use plain water to flush these materials from the underbody of your vehicle. Take care to clean any areas in which mud and other debris can collect. Loosen any sediment packed in closed area before flushing with water.

If you wish, your authorised Chevrolet repairer can provide this service for you.

NOTE

When you wash the engine compartment, fuel, grease, and oil residue may be released into the environment.

Wash the engine at your authorised Chevrolet repairer or other location equipped with an oil separator in the car wash bay.

Dispose of used engine oil, brake fluid, transaxle fluid, antifreeze, batteries, and tyres at local authorised waste disposal facilities, or though a vendor who is under legal obligation to do so when you replace such materials.

Never place any of these items with household rubbish or pour them down drains.

Mishandling of such potentially hazardous materials can cause permanent environmental damage.

VEHICLE MAINTENANCE

•	GENERAL INFORMATION7-2	SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE7-3
•	SEVERE CONDITIONS7-2	

GENERAL INFORMATION

This section provides the maintenance information which is necessary to ensure that your vehicle gives many years of satisfying motoring.

You are responsible for properly operating and maintaining your vehicle in accordance with the instructions described in this manual. Failure to do so is likely to result in the denial of warranty coverage.

It is your responsibility to properly maintain and operate your vehicle. Be sure that you follow the periodic required maintenance schedule and general operation instructions in this manual.

It is also your responsibility to keep records and receipts as proof of regular maintenance. Records and receipts together with the owner's manual should be transferred to any subsequent owner.

You may have maintenance services performed on your vehicle by any qualified person or facility. However, it is recommended that the maintenance services be performed by an authorised Chevrolet repairer who will have well-trained technicians and genuine parts.

Non-genuine parts have not been examined or approved by our company. We can certify neither the suitability nor the safety of nongenuine parts and is not liable for damage caused by their use.

Inadequate, incomplete, or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could even lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

SEVERE CONDITIONS

You should follow the periodic required maintenance schedule. See "SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE" in the owner's manual.

NORMAL CONDITIONS

The normal condition for driving means driving under typical, everyday driving conditions. You may follow the ordinary maintenance schedule

SEVERE CONDITIONS

If the vehicle is operated under any of the following conditions, some of the maintenance schedule items need to be serviced more frequently.

- Repeated short-distance driving less than 5 miles (10 Km).
- Extensive idling and/or slow-speed driving in stop-and-go traffic.
- · Driving on dusty roads.
- · Driving on hilly or mountainous terrain.
- Towing a trailer.
- Driving in heavy city traffic where the outside temperatures regularly reach 90°F(32°C) or higher.
- Driving as a taxi, police or delivery vehicle.
- Frequent driving when outside temperature remains below freezing.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Service schedules

Maintenance Interval

Every 1 year / 15,000km(10,000 miles) (whichever occurs first)

Maintenance I -- Use Maintenance I for the first service or if Maintenance II was performed previously

Maintenance II -- Use Maintenance II if the previous service performed was Maintenance I.

For vehicles equipped with an oil life monitoring system - If the oil change lamp illuminates and it has been 10 months or more from the previous maintenance, then the relevant maintenance should also be carried out.

No	Service	Maintenance I	Maintenance II
1	Replace engine oil and filter.	R	R
2	Inspect for any leaks or damage.	I	1
3	Inspect engine air filter.	I	1
4	Inspect tyres for inflation pressures and wear.	I	I
5	Inspect brake system.	I	I
6	Inspect engine coolant and windshield washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed.	I	I
7	Inspect suspension and steering components.	I	I
8	Inspect wiper blades and the operation of exterior lighting.	I	I
9	Inspect drive belts.	I	I
10	Perform any required additional services - see applicable section.	I	I
11	Check for Field Actions.	I	1

7-4 VEHICLE MAINTENANCE

No	Service	Maintenance I	Maintenance II
	Maintenance 2 - perform all services described in Maintenance 1, plus the following		
12	Replace Brake Fluid.		R
13	Inspect engine cooling system.		I
14	Inspect restraint system components.		I
15	Inspect powertrain and driveline components.		I
16	Lubricate body components.		I

I-Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.

R-Replace or change

No	Description	Captiva
17	Replace pollen filter	Every 15,000km(10,000 miles) / 1 year
18	Replace air filter	Every 60,000km(40,000 miles) / 4 years
19	Replace spark plugs	Every 150,000km(100,000 miles) / 10 years
20	Replace diesel fuel filter	Every 60,000km(40,000 miles) / 2 years
21	Replace engine coolant	Every 240,000km(160,000 miles) / 5 years
22	Replace automatic transmission oil	Normal conditions : every 150,000km(100,000 miles)
		Severe conditions : every 75,000km(50,000 miles)
23	Replace timing chain	Every 240,000km(160,000 miles) / 10 years

Footnotes

Maintenance Item	Note
1	Replace every 1 year or "change engine oil" lamp on.
2	Fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. The system should be inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.
3&17	If driving regularly in dusty conditions, inspect the filter more frequently.
3817	If driving regularly in dusty conditions, the filter may require replacement more often.
	Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and discs
5	for surface condition. Inspect drum brake linings/shoes for wear or cracks. Inspect other brake parts, including drums,
	wheel cylinders, calipers, parking brake, etc.
7	Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damage, loose or missing parts or signs of wear.
/	Inspect power steering components for, binding, cracks, chafing, etc.
8	Inspect wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. Clean the windshield and wiper blades, if contaminated.
0	Replace wiper blades that are worn or damaged.

Maintenance Item	Note
12	If driving under severe conditions: driving in hilly or mountainous terrain, or towing a trailer frequently, brake fluid may require replacement more often.
13	Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen, or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings, and clamps; replace with genuine parts if needed. To help ensure correct operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended.
14	Make sure the safety belt reminder light and safety belt assemblies are working correctly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Ensure any torn or frayed safety belts are replaced.
16	Lubricate all key lock cylinders, door hinges and latches, hood hinges and latches, and trunk lid hinges and latches. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.
General for auto transmission	Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions: • In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher. • In hilly or mountainous terrain. • When doing frequent trailer towing. • Uses such as found in taxi, police, or delivery service.

Maintenance Item	Note
General for belts	Visually inspect belt for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage. Replace belt if necessary.
General all	Check all systems for interference or binding and for damaged or missing parts. Replace parts as needed. Replace any components that has excessive wear.
Tyre condition &	Tyre condition should be inspected before driving and tyre pressure should be checked each time you fill your fuel tank
inflation pressure	or at least once a month using a tyre pressure gauge.
Wheel alignment	If necessary, rotate and balance wheels.

8 TECHNICAL INFORMATION

•	IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS 8-2	•	ENGINE OIL	8-4
•	FI IIID CHART 8-3	•	VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS	8-0

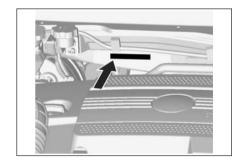
IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS

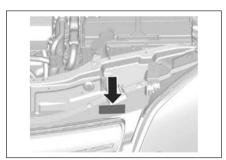
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is engraved near the centre of the fire wall.

IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The identification plate is located in the engine compartment.





FLUID CHART

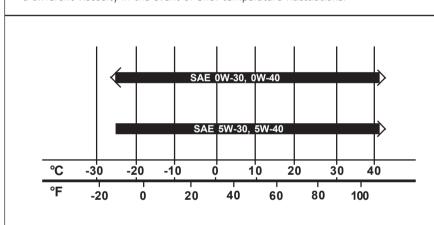
Item		Capacity	Classification
Engine oil	2.4D	4.7L	dexos2
	3.0D	5.7L	
(Including oil filter)	2.2 DSL	5.6L	For more information, see "engine oil" in Section 6.
	2.4D	8.5L	
Engine Coolant	3.0D	10.9L	DEX-COOL
	2.2 DSL	9.1L	
Automatic Transaxle Fluid	2.4D / 3.0D	8.465L	DEXRON° VI
Automatic Iransaxie Fluiu	2.2 DSL	8.765L	DEXRON VI
Manual Transaxle Fluid		1.8L	BoT402
Brake Fluid		0.67L	DOT 4
Clutch Fluid		0.053L	DOT 4
Power Steering Fluid		1.1L	DEXRON° VI
Transfer Case Fluid	AWD	0.8 ± 0.1L	Synthetic hypoid 75W-90
Differential Carrier Assembly Fluid	AWD	0.6 ± 0.05L	Synthetic hypoid 75W-90

ENGINE OIL



Engine

Select an oil viscosity based on the outside air temperature. Do not switch to a different viscosity in the event of brief temperature fluctuations.



VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS

ENGINE DATA

Engine	2.4D	3.0D	DSL (163PS)	DSL (184PS)
Number of cylinders	4	4	4	4
Displacement [cc]	2384	2997	2231	2231
Output [kW] at rpm	123 at 5600	190 at 6900	120 at 3800	135 at 3800
Max. torque [Nm] at rpm	230 at 4600	288 at 5800	350 at 2000	400 at 2000
Fuel type	Petrol	Petrol	Diesel	Diesel

TOP SPEED

	2.4D	3.0D	DSL (163PS)	DSL (184PS)	
Manual transaylo (km/h)	190 (FWD)		189 (FWD)	' 2 00	
Manual transaxle (km/h)	186 (AWD)	-	188 (AWD)		
Automatic transpula (lum /h)	5 transavio (km/h) 175		184 (FWD)	101	
Automatic transaxle (km/h)	175	198	182 (AWD)	191	

8-6 TECHNICAL INFORMATION

FUEL CONSUMPTION - CO2-EMISSIONS

	2.4D FWD MT	2.4D AWD MT	2.4D AWD AT	3.0D AWD AT	DSL(163PS) FWD MT	DSL(163PS) FWD AT	DSL AWD MT	DSL AWD AT
Urban [L/100km]	11.7	12.2	12.8	15.5	8.4	9.8	8.5	10.0
Extra-urban [L/100km]	7.4	7.6	7.4	8.0	5.3	6.2	5.5	6.4
Combinedl [L/100 km]	8.9	9.3	9.3	10.7	6.4	7.5	6.6	7.7
CO2 [g/km]	210	219	219	252	170	198	174	203

CURB WEIGHT WITH DRIVER (75KG)

		2.4D 5seat	2.4D 7seat	3.0D Sseat	3.0D 7seat	DSL 5 seat	DSL 7 seat
Front whool drive (kg)	MT	1768~1848	1793~1873	-	-	1853~1933	1878~1958
Front wheel drive (kg)	AT	-	-	-	-	1878~1958	1903~1983
All subset drive (ta)	MT	1843~1923	1848~1948	-	-	1928~2008	1953~2033
All wheel drive (kg)	AT	1868~1948	1893~1973	1890~1970	1915~1995	1953~2033	1978~2058

DIMENSIONS

	4672
Length [mm]	4673
Width [mm]	1849
Height (with roof rack) [mm]	1756
Wheel base [mm]	2707
Track (Front) [mm]	1569
Track (Rear) [mm]	1576
Minimum turning radius [m]	11.87

CAPACITIES

Engine	2.4D 3.0D Diesel				
Fuel tank [L]	65				
Engine oil [L]	4.7	5.7	5.6		

8-8 TECHNICAL INFORMATION

TYRE PRESSURES

Tyre size	Wheel dimension	Pressure (psi/bar/kPa)		
Tyle 3ize		Front	Rear	
235/60R17	17x7J	Below 4 occupants : 35/2.4/240	Below 4 occupants : 35/2.4/240	
235/55R18	18x7J	(Eco. pressure : 38/2.6/260)	(Eco. pressure : 38/2.6/260)	
235/50R19	10.471	Above 5 occupants, with towing trailer :	Above 5 occupants, with towing trailer :	
235/50819	19x7J	35/2.4/240	41/2.8/280	
T155/90R16 (Temporary)	16X4T	60/4.2/420	60/4.2/420	

9 NAVIGATION MANUAL

0.	INTRODUCTION AND SYSTEM FUNCTION 9-3	ł
	0.1 INTRODUCTION 9-3	}
	0.2 SYSTEM FUNCTION 9-20)
1.	WELCOME TO A-NAVI SYSTEM9-27	,
	1.1 PRECAUTIONS9-27	,
	1.2 INTRODUCTION TO A-NAVI SYSTEM9-27	,
2.	GETTING STARTED 9-28	ì
	2.1 QUICK REFERENCE 9-28	}
	2.2 GETTING STARTED 9-29)
	2.3 ROUTE& FREE NAVIGATION MAPS 9-30)
	2.4 KEYBOARDS 9-34	ļ
3.	SELECTING A DESTINATION - GO TO?9-35	j
	3.1 SEARCH DESTINATION BY ADDRESS 9-36	j

3.2 SEARCH A DESTINATION BY POI	9-40
3.3 SELECT A DESTINATION IN RECENT	
DESTINATIONS	9-45
3.4 SELECT A POINT ON MAP AS DESTINATION	9-46
3.5 SEARCH A DESTINATION BY COORDINATES	9-47
3.6 SELECT A DESTINATION IN ADDRESS BOOK	9-48
3.7 UK POSTCODE	9-49
3.8 GO HOME	9-50
. ROUTE PLAN	9-51
4.1 DESTINATION MANAGEMENT	9-52
4.2 ROUTE OPTIONS	
4.3 SELECT NAVIGATION MODE	9-53

5.	NAVIGATION	9-55		6.4 ADDRESS BOOK MANAGEMENT 9-63
	5.1 MAP OPTIONS	9-56		6.5 DAY /NIGHT MODE SWITCH 9-64
	5.2 ROUTE INFORMATION	9-58		6.6 SET HOME ADDRESS 9-65
	5.3 ROUTE PLAN	9-58		6.7 GPS STATUS 9-65
	5.4 DETOUR	9-59		6.8 LANGUAGE 9-66
	5.5 RECALCULATE	9-59		6.9 RIGHT/LEFT-HAND DRIVE 9-66
	5.6 TERMINATE	9-60		6.10 MEASURE UNIT 9-67
	5.7 AUTO-ROUTING	9-60		6.11 DRIVING SPEED DISPLAY ON/OFF 9-67
6.	SETTINGS	9-60		6.12 ABOUT 9-67
	6.1 VOLUME	9-61	7	APPENDIX 9-68
	6.2 SAFETY ALERT	9-62		7.1 ATTENTION 9-68
	6.3 TRACE RECORD	9-63		7.2 POI ICONS9-70

0.1 INTRODUCTION

1. GETTING STARTED

Safety Information

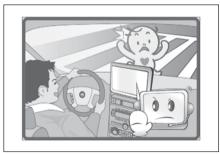
Before using the navigation system, please read the following safety information. When using the system, these safety rules must be followed to prevent personal injury to you and others and avoid damage to property.

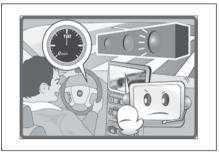
Traffic regulations have priority over any instructions from the navigation system. Always follow the posted traffic signs, speed limits and road restrictions.

While driving, do not look at the screen more than a second or so at a time, and only after deciding you can do so safely

For your safety, do not operate the system controls while driving. It can distract the driver and may result in a serious accident. Park the vehicle in a safe area before operating the system.





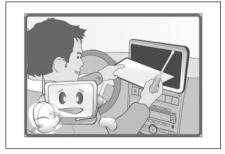


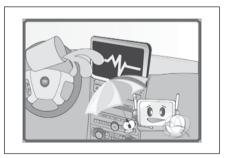
9-4 NAVIGATION MANUAL

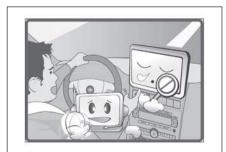
Do not disassemble or modify the device. If you do, it may result in accidents, fire, or electrical shock.

Do not pour water or insert foreign objects into the device. This may cause smoke emissions, fires or shocks.

Do not use the system if you notice any malfunction such as a frozen screen or lack of sound. Continued use of the system may result in accident.





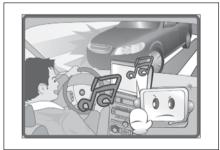


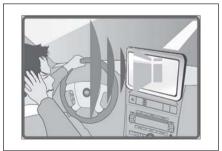
Do not park your vehicle in an unauthorized area to operate the system.

The various volume settings should be selected so that acoustic signals from outside the vehicle are audible at all time.

Check the volume prior to turning the device on. If the volume is turned up when turning the switch on, a loud sound will emit which may damage your hearing.





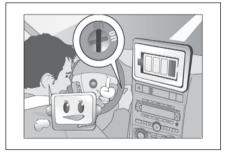


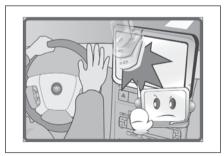
9-6 NAVIGATION MANUAL

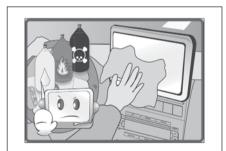
Do not keep the system running with the engine stopped. Doing so can drain the vehicle's battery. When you use the system, always keep the engine running.

Do not apply excessive force to the screen. This may cause the system malfunction.

Clean only with a cloth slightly moistened with water. Use no chemical or other domestic cleaning agents, as these could damage the screen.



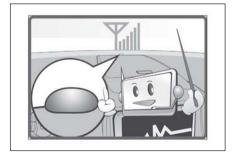


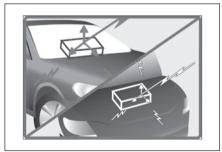


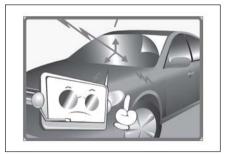
Do not place objects on the dashboard. It will affect the sensor which controls head lamp and display brightness.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel or rear window shelf. Doing so may disrupt the GPS satellite signal and cause the system to operate inaccurately.

If the vehicle's windshield is tinted with a reflective metal coating, it will affect the GPS reception.







Should the liquid crystal panel crack, do not come into contact with the liquid coming from the interior of the panel. This may lead to inflammation of the skin.

- If the liquid is accidentally ingested, see a doctor immediately
- If the liquid gets into the eyes or into the skin, wash out with a large amount of water and see a doctor immediately

Do not, under any circumstances, insert SD Card with irregular shape into SD Card Slot.

These cards may become jammed or destroy the slot. The unit will then have to be exchanged at your expense.

The unit may not function properly in extreme cold or extreme hot conditions. Bring the ambient temperature back to normal to ensure proper operation.

Device Components

Control Panel

NAVI : Navigation
 MENU : Main Menu

③ TRIP : Driving Information

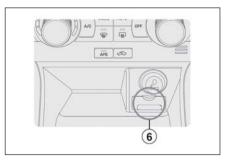
(4) DIM : Switches the display between Day

screen and Night screen.

⑤ SD card slot

6 USB connector





Steering Wheel

- (1) Power on/off
- ② Changing to the next station or track

 To reach the next station in the selected frequency band or the next music track
- ③ Changing modes

 Switch between AM. FM, CD, AUX, NAVI and Multimedia mode each time the button is pressed.
- (4) Adjusting Volume

A CAUTION

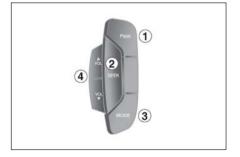
Steering wheel switch may not be available depending on the type of vehicle.

 If you press the MODE or SEEK button repeatedly at short intervals, CPU overload may occur and cause the system crash.

2. BASIC OPERATIONS

Starting the System

The navigation system starts when the ignition switch is placed in the ACC or ON position. When the system starts, the screen displays last used mode





The power will turn OFF when turning off the engine. After the engine turned off, the system runs for 30 seconds to save the data.

A CAUTION

- Last used mode is saved when the engine turned off.
- If you start the system in 30 seconds after the key pull off, the system doesn't need booting time.
- To reset the system, press the MENU and TRIP button together for 10 seconds. Release the buttons when the system begins to restart.

System Controls

The following hard keys are located on the navigation system.

(1) NAVI : Navigation

2 MENU : Main Menu

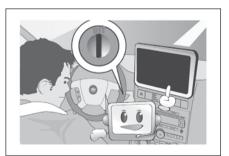
③ TRIP : Driving Information

4 DIM: Brightness Change

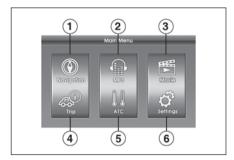
Main Menu

Press the MENU hard key to display the Main Menu screen. From this screen you can reach all of the navigation system functions. Screen buttons will be highlighted when a function is available and disabled when they are unavailable.

- Navigation
- (2) MP3
- (3) Movie
- 4 Trip Information
- (5) ATC Information
- 6 Settings







NAVIGATION MANUAL 9-11

MP3

- 1) File Information
- ② Playing Time
- ③ Playing Status
- 4 Current Folder
- ⑤ File List
- 6 Repeat
- 7 List Control
- 8 Stop
- 9 Previous File
- 10 Play/Pause
- Part Remember.mp3

 Remember.mp3

 Chick_Korea.—Spain.mp3
 Steve Barakatt rainbow bridge.mp3

 Steve Barakatt rainbow bridge.mp3

 The stee of the Blind).mp3

 The stee of the Blind).mp3

- ① Next File
- 12 Higher Folder
- (13) Random Order

Movie

- ① Current Folder
- ② File List
- 3 Higher Folder
- 4 List control



9-12 NAVIGATION MANUAL

- (5) Stop
- (6) Previous File
- 7 Play/Pause
- 8 Next File
- (9) File List
- (10) Repeat
- (1) Full Screen On/Off
- 12 Playing status

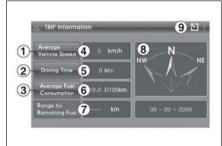
Trip

- (1) Average Vehicle Speed reset
- ② Driving Time reset
- 3 Average Fuel Consumption reset
- 4 Average Vehicle Speed
- ⑤ Driving Time
- 6 Average Fuel Consumption
- 7 Range for Remaining Fuel
- 8 Display Compass
- (9) Return to Main Menu

ATC

Besides pressing the ATC button in Main Menu, ATC information is displayed on the bottom of the screen whenever the information relevant to the air conditioner is changed such as temperature, air flow, etc. This Pop Up screen will be displayed for 5 seconds.







A CAUTION

• If you want to know about detailed ATC information, refer to climate control section.

<u>Settings</u>

- 1) Screen Touch Calibration
- ② System Information
- ③ System Upgrade
- 4 Navigation Upgrade
- (5) User Preference





System Setup

Volume

1. MP3, Movie, FM/AM, CD

You can adjust the volume by turning the audio system volume knob or pressing the steering wheel switch.

If you press the volume knob, the volume becomes mute. Press again to turn the sound back on.

To turn the sound off, press the volume knob for 3 seconds. ATC information is displayed on the screen when it turned off.

2. Navigation

You can change the volume levels of voice guidance in Navigation mode only. You may also choose to turn voice guidance prompts off

You can't raise or lower the volume of navigation information in relation to other audio sources.

Screen

If you press the DIM hard key, the system will dim up to 70% of the brightness.

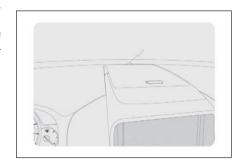
There are 3 steps to adjust the screen brightness.

Press the DIM hard key for 3 seconds to turn off the display. During the screen off, the GPS positioning function keeps working. The screen turns on again when any hard key is pressed.

A CAUTION

 According to an external light, the screen brightness is automatically adjusted.

Do not place objects on the dashboard.



Settings

Touch: calibrate the touch screen.

System Information : displays the information on the navigation system software.

System Upgrade

Navigation Upgrade

User Preference : customize the system to better suit your needs.

<u>Touch</u>

You can calibrate the touch screen if it is not responding accurately to your taps.

Tap the centre of the target with stylus. When the target moves to another position, tap the new target. Repeat each time to complete the calibration process.

System Information

Display the current version of the system.

H/W : hardware S/W : software

O/S : operating system
GPS : GPS Firmware





9-16 NAVIGATION MANUAL

System Upgrade

Insert updatable SD card into SD card slot. (For updatable SD card, Please contact an authorized GM dealer)

Press the MENU hard key and touch the Settings button.

Press the System Upgrade button.

Press UPGRADE button for system upgrade. If you do not need to upgrade a particular system, press check out for disable.

A CAUTION

 Do not remove SD card/USB, turn the engine off, or operate the system while upgrading, to avoid the system malfunction.







Navigation Upgrade

Insert updatable SD card into SD card slot. (For purchasing updatable navigation SD card, Please contact an authorized GM dealer)

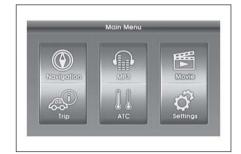
Press the MENU hard key and touch the Settings button

Press the Navigation Upgrade button.

Press UPGRADE button for navigation upgrade.

A CAUTION

• Depending on the size of the files, it takes up to 25 minutes for update.







User Preference

The navigation system can be customized to make it easier to use. You can adjust Display Unit, Language, Time Zone.

Confirm the selection by pressing the Save button.

Display Unit

This allows you to change the measurement unit used in the system.

Distance: Miles or Kilometers Temperature : Celsius or Fahrenheit

Volume: Liter or Gallon

When Gallon is selected for the volume unit, the distance unit in Trip Information is changed to Miles automatically.

Language

Select the desired language. This system supports 11 languages for displayed text in main menu. Navigation menu supports 11 languages for displayed text and voice commands as well.

NOTE

Time Zone

Use button to set the appropriate time zone. Check Daylight Savings if it is in effect for your time zone. (Daylight savings is not automatically adjusted.)







• Time zone list that you can select.

Time Zone	Display
Romance Standard Time	(GMT+01:00) Brussels
GMT Standard Time	(GMT+00:00) London
Western Europe Standard Time	(GMT+01:00) Amsterdam
Central European Standard Time	(GMT+01:00) Sarajevo
Central Europe Standard Time	(GMT+01:00) Belgrade
GTB Standard Time	(GMT+02:00) Bucharest

0.2 SYSTEM FUNCTION

1. MULTIMEDIA

MP3

Playable MP3 file standard

Compression type	MPEG-1 Audio Layer III
Sampling frequency	8,11.025, 12, 16, 22.05, 24, 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
Bit rate	8~320 (kbps)
Max. directory layer	8
Max. characters for folder/file name	64 Bytes
Character set for folder/file name	A to Z, 0 to 9, $_{-}$ (underscore)
Max. number of folders	256
Max. number of files	512
ID3 Tag	Ver 1.0, Ver 1.1, Ver 2.2, Ver 2.3, Ver 2.4

- A fixed bit rate of 96, 128, 192kbps with sampling frequency of 44.1kHz is recommended for stable audio quality at playback.
- If the bit rate exceeds 192kbps, there may be sound jumping during MP3 playback. Use 192kbps or lower bit rate for the MP3.

A CAUTION

• Each file that is not an MP3 file is also counted as a file.

How to use the MP3 player

Press the MENU hard key and touch the MP3 button.

Press the MODE button on steering wheel until MP3 player is displayed.

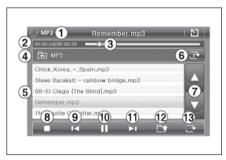
The mode changes when you press steering wheel switch.

 $\begin{array}{l} {\rm AM} \rightarrow {\rm FM} \rightarrow {\rm CD} \rightarrow {\rm AUX} \rightarrow {\rm NAVI} \rightarrow {\rm Multimedia} \rightarrow {\rm return\ to\ AM} \end{array}$

- ① File Information: Displays the file currently being played.
- ② Playing Time
- ③ Playing Status
- 4 Current Folder : Displays the level of the file currently being played.
- (5) File List
- (6) Repeat : The file currently being played will be repeated.
- 7 List Control : Moving between pages.
- (8) Stop

- Previous File : Selects previous music file.
- 10 Play/Pause
- 1 Next File : Selects next music file.
- (12) Higher Folder : Displays the next higher folder level.
- (13) Random Order : Playing songs in random order.





9-22 NAVIGATION MANUAL

Movie

Supported file formats

Audio	MP3, WMA, OGG, WAV (bit rate 128~192kbps)
Video MPEG1/2/4, DivX3.0/4.0/5.0, XviD, WMV7.0/8.0/9.0	
DTS	Not supported
Max. Resolution	800 x 480

A CAUTION

- A Movie which has bigger than 800x480 resolution may not be played properly.
- When a Movie is being played, other operation will become slower.
- With mixed mode SD Card/USB (combination of audio, move and data) only the audio or movie files are recognized and played back depending on a selected mode.
- For driver's safety, movie can be played only when the vehicle is stationary.



How to use the Movie player

Press the MENU hard key and touch the Movie button.

- 1) Current Folder
- ② File List
- 3 Higher Folder
- 4 List control

- Stop
- 6 Previous File
- 7) Play/Pause
- 8 Next File
- (9) File List
- 10 Repeat
- ① Full Screen On/Off
- 12 Playing Status







SD card / USB

- Connect USB device after the engine is turned on
- If you format USB device, choose Byte/ Sector under 64Kbyte.
- Support FAT 12/16/32 format of USB device. NTFS file system is not supported.
- When pulling out USB device, strange sound(noise) is heard sometimes.
- Pulling out USB device during playing may cause the device malfunction.
- It takes time to ready for play, depending on the type of USB device or file format.
- Sometimes the system cani⁻t recognize USB HUB, so connect USB device directly.
- HDD type/CF memory is not supported.
- DRM(Digital Rights Management) file format will not work.

A CAUTION

Do not, under any circumstances, insert SD Card with irregular shape into SD Card Slot.

These cards may become jammed or destroy the slot. The unit will then have to be exchanged at your expense.

2. INFORMATION FEATURES

Trip

Trip information displays driving-related information by graphics.

Press the TRIP hard key or press the MENU hard key and touch the Trip button.

Press button to close.



- (1) Average Vehicle Speed reset
- ② Driving Time reset
- (3) Average Fuel Consumption reset
- 4 Average Vehicle Speed
- ⑤ Driving Time
- 6 Average Fuel Consumption
- (7) Range for Remaining Fuel Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. This distance is estimated from the average fuel economy over the last several miles, so it will vary depend on speed, traffic, etc.
- Average Vehicle Speed 4 0 km/h

 2 Driving Time 5 0 Min

 Average Fuel 610.0 L/100km

 Range for Remaining Fuel 7 --- km

 08 09 2008

- (8) Display Compass : Directions of vehicle's movement
- (9) Return to Main Menu
- * select reset when you are starting a trip or route that you want to record.

ATC

ATC information displays the state of air conditional.

Press the MENU hard key and touch the ATC button.

ATC information is also displayed by pressing the volume knob of the audio for 3 seconds.

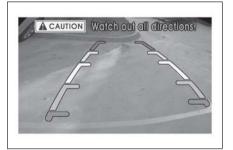


9-26 NAVIGATION MANUAL

- (1) Setting Temperature
- (2) Outside Temperature
- 3 Direction of the Wind
- 4 State of Air Conditional (on/off)
- (5) State of AUTO (on/off)
- (6) Power of the Wind

Rear View Camera

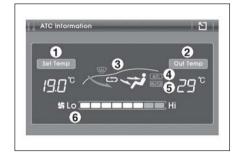
When you are trying to park the vehicle, guideline will be displayed on the screen. (guideline appears when shifting gear to back)



Color	Distance
92	0 ~ 30cm
	30cm ~ 1m
	1m ~ 2m
	2m ~ 3m
	3m ~ 5m

A CAUTION

- This function is not supported depending on the type of vehicle.
- Depending on Rear View Camera wholly is dangerous when unexpected situation is occurred. Watch out all directions when parking.
- Guideline is optimized according to vehicle's width. But parking line may not match with guideline.
- Lower the volume (MP3, Navigation) that you can hear the parking alert.
- Pulling out SD Card/USB device during Rear View Camera mode may cause the device malfunction.



1. WELCOME TO A-NAVI SYSTEM

Thank you for choosing Advanced Navigation System ("A-Navi System") as your in-car navigator in Europe. This manual is a detailed description of the navigation software. You can easily learn to use it; and we still recommend you read this manual to understand screens and operation steps of A-Navi System.

1.1 PRECAUTIONS

- For your safety concern, we recommend that you operate A-Navi System before start of journey. Do not operate A-Navi System while driving as this might lead to collision or damage. Please ask your passenger to operate it if necessary.
- Local driving regulations and driving conditions have to be observed all the time.
 They have precedence over the driving instructions given by A-Navi System.
- Although all safety considerations have been taken into account while designing the A-Navi System, the use of navigation system does not release the driver from driver's responsibility for proper and prudent behavior on the road.

1.2 INTRODUCTION TO A-NAVI SYSTEM

- ✓ Quick and Easy to Learn --- you can learn how to operate it easily within 3 minutes.
- ✓ Intelligent Multi-Map Management ---A-Navi System do not require you change maps when you navigate between map segments or countries. You could move map screen in any direction and check POI information on map.
- ✓ Fast Visualized Positioning --- you can very quickly locate the current position and get information about the next turning point.
- ✓ Smooth Map Scrolling --- When driving, the map will scroll up and down on the screen in order to help you get an overview of your location (or position).
- ✓ Zoom In/Out --- The map scale adjusts according to the driving speed. This allows you to have a proper view of the map.

- ✓ Day/Night Mode Switch --- the backlight of the map and the color of the indicator of the position fix can be changed manually. This gives you a better visualization of the map at night.
- ✓ Two Waypoints --- allow 2 waypoints at most and it guides you to your destination one by one.
- ✓ 23 POI Categories --- A-Navi System allows you to search for restaurants, airports, petrol stations, etc. in a very convenient and easy way.
- ✓ Reasonable Route Planning --- it takes all traffic regulations into consideration when planning a route, such as one-way restriction, turn restriction, and so on; besides that, user could change route options based on the driving preference or conditions.
- ✓ Information about Turning Points --provided with the detailed information of each turning point of a proposed route, you can view all turning points along your entire trip.

- ✓ Schematic Map of Inter-Crossing ---Clear schematic illustration of each intercrossing guarantees you to view it in advance and keeps you on the right track to your destination.
- ✓ Information about GPS Satellites --- You can view the status and number of signals received from GPS satellites.
- ✓ Track Log --- A-Navi System logs your trip information. This information can be replayed or re-used for future trips.
- ✓ Multi-POI locations --- Display two or more POIs with the same or close location.
- ✓ Navigation in tunnel and underground car parking --- gyroscope free inertial navigation system helps you never get lost though no GPS signal.
- ✓ Off-Road Navigation --- when you drive off road, system will automatically store current position and traveled path on map.

- ✓ Left/Right-hand Drive --- you can change the left/right layout between map and Navigation Info Column to observe local regulations and driving customer.
- ✓ Vehicle Speed Display on/off --- display or hide current vehicle speed.
- ✓ Highway Signpost --- displaying distance from your current position to next exit.
- ✓ Multi-language Support --- support 11 Voices and languages.
- ✓ Safety Alert for Speeding --- Safety Alert is based on legally speed limit on different types of road. System will alarm you by voice guidance when you are approaching to the speed limit road. Besides that, you can set speed tolerance from 0 to 20%.

2. GETTING STARTED

A-Navi System is a good choice for in-car navigation. You can easily use it by tapping the screen or drawing the map with your fingers.

2.1 QUICK REFERENCE

This chapter gives you a brief introduction of how to use A-Navi System. Before we explore all the detailed functionalities provided by this application, please make sure that:

 A-Navi System searches for positioning information from at least three satellites and your position is fixed once the application starts.

When you use the GPS receiver for the first time, it may take 2-3 minutes to secure satellite information and orientate accurate position (Cold start). Your position fix is stored in the memory. For subsequent use of the GPS receiver, it will only take 1-3 minutes to locate your position (Warm start). Once your position is fixed by the GPS receiver, the system starts navigation immediately without any extra operation when you start the application.

2.2 GETTING STARTED

When start A-Navi System for the first time, system enter Chevrolet "Welcome" screen.

It takes about 15s to automatically switch "Welcome" screen to "Caution" Screen.

O Please read A-Navi System Caution carefully and click

Agree to enter "Free Navi Map" screen.

© For Free Navi Map icons and details, please refer to Chapter 2.3.

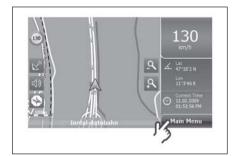
In Free Navi Map, you could let system go without any operation and it tracks your driving route.



Picture 2.1 Welcome Screen



Picture 2.2 System Caution



Picture 2.3 Free Navi Map

◎ If you want to access more functions, please touch Main Menu on Free Navi Map; System then enter Free Navi Menu screen.

In Free Navi Menu, you can access key functions of A-Navi System as below:

- ◆ Touch "Go to" to set destination(S). (Please refer to Chap. 3 for details).
- Touch "Map Options" to change map parameters. (Please refer to Chap. 5.1 for details).
- Touch "Settings" to change all settings parameters. (Please refer to Chap. 6 for details).
- Touch the hot key " and the system will be back to navigation map.

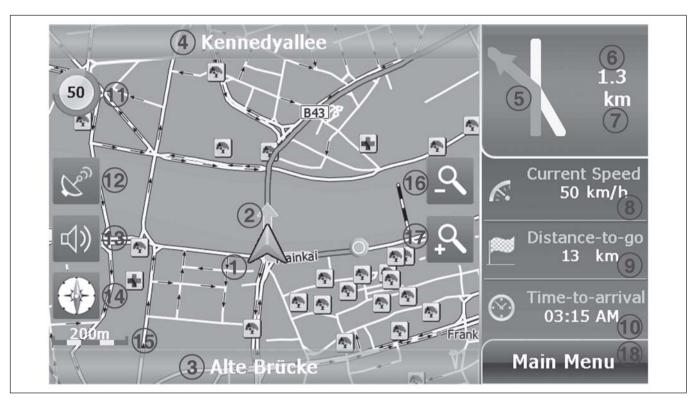
When you use A-Navi System for the first time, you may want to change the language of the system. Please refer to Chapter 6.8. for details.



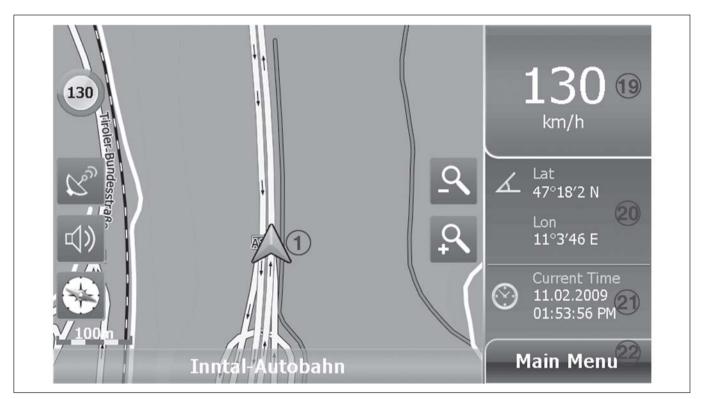
Picture 2.4 Free Navigation Menu

2.3 ROUTE& FREE NAVIGATION MAPS

Route/Free navigation map screen is the most frequently used screen of A-Navi System. Free navigation map screen displays when you cold start A-Navi System, while Route Navigation Map displays when you continue last navigation when you restart the system. As to the difference between Route Navigation and Free Navigation, please refer to Chapter 4.3.



Picture 2.5 Route Navigation Map



Picture 2.6 Free Navi Map

- 1. Car Icon --- indicates the current position 10.ETA --- Estimate time to arrive the destiand driving direction.
- 2. **Turning sign ---** The sliver arrow shows you which road you should take at the approaching turning point.
- 3. Current road --- the field is empty if the road is unnamed.
- 4. **Next road ---** the name of the next approaching road.
- 5. Turning schema--- show the road structure at next turning; and by touching this icon, system will announce the next turning information such as "About 900 meters, turn left".
- 6. Distance to next turn --- show you the distance to next turning point virtually.
- 7. Distance progress bar
- 8. Current Speed --- show current driving speed.
- 9. **Distance-to-go ---** Remaining distance between start and destination or next waypoint.

- nation.
- 11. Speed Alert --- show you speed camera ahead and its speed limit
- 12. GPS Status --- touch to view GPS Status: Gray means GPS signal is weak or GPS has not been fixed while Green means GPS has been fixed.
- 13. Volume --- touch to adjust the volume for voice guidance.
- 14. **Compass ---** indicates the North of the
- 15. Scale Bar --- indicate scale of map.
- 16. **Zoom in button ---** touch to zoom in the map.
- 17. **Zoom out button ---** touch to zoom out the map.
- 18. Main Menu--- touch to enter Route Navi Menu (please refer to Chap. 5 for details).

- 19. **Driving speed ---** the current driving speed.
- 20.Longitude /Latitude --- show the longitude and Latitude of current map center.
- 21. Current Time
- 22. Main Menu --- touch to enter Free Navi Menu (please refer to Chap. 5 for details).

9-34 NAVIGATION MANUAL

2.4 KEYBOARDS

A-Navi System provides alphabetical-format keyboard which includes Latin alphabets, numeric, punctuation and especially special characters/symbols in 30 languages.

ABC-type Keyboard only contains letters.

23 : touch to display numeric and punctuation.

GER: touch to display special symbols in Germany.



touch to switch special symbol keyboards in other countries.



touch and return to ABC keyboard.



: Space key.



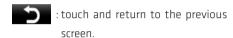
: touch and delete last letter you entered



Picture 2.7 Alphabetic-format Keyboard



Picture 2.8 Numeric Keyboard



On Map : touch and display the location of highlighted record on map.

OK : Confirm keyboard entry or selection.

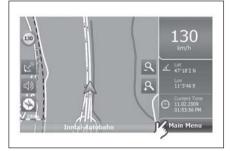
3. SELECTING A DESTINATION - GO TO?

In order to navigate with A-Navi System or to plan a route, you first of all have to enter a destination and then calculate a route.

In "Free Navi Map" (Picture 3.1) touch "Main Menu" to enter "Free Navi Menu" (Picture 3.2), and then touch "Go to" to enter the "Search Menu" (Picture 3.3).



Picture 2.9 Special Symbol Keyboard



Picture 3.1 Free Navi Map



9-36 NAVIGATION MANUAL

In Search Menu, A-Navi System provides you six different ways of specifying an address, city, POI(Point of Interest) and other locations which you can select as start or destination. This chapter will detail the operation steps one by one.

3.1 SEARCH DESTINATION BY ADDRESS

For example: No.25, Senkenberganlage, Frankfurt, Germany

- Touch "Address Search" on "Search Menu" screen;
- ◎ In the "Search Menu" screen (Picture 3.4), touch "Country" to enter the "Country Search" screen (Picture 3.5).
- 2. Select one among European countries;
- O In "Country Search" Screen, the default country is the recent search country "Ger-

many". You could touch or to browse country list and select one among 41 European countries.



Picture 3.3 Search Menu



Picture 3.4 Address Search



Picture 3.5 Country Search

- 3. In order to specify the destination, firstly enter city name, and select the desired city;
- © Touch the desired city and touch "OK" to confirm the city selection. The system returns to the "Address Search" screen (Picture 3.7)
- 4. Now enter the road name, and select the desired road:
- ◎ In "Address Search" screen, touch the Road input field and enter "Road Search" screen.
- On the "Road Selection" screen, enter road name or the prefix on keyboard.
- Once road is selected, touch "OK", then return to the "Address Search" screen.



Picture 3.6 City Search



Picture3.7 Address Search



Picture 3.8 Road Search

9-38 NAVIGATION MANUAL

- 5. Enter the house number;
- O After specifying the road, touch the field of "click here and search house number" to enter House No screen.
- © Enter house number on keyboard and 6. Tap "On map" to check the location of intouch "OK" to return "Address Search" screen. If the house number you entered does not exist, system will regard the first result as default position.
 - put address or directly tap "OK" and go to "Route Plan".
 - O Now you can touch "On Map" to check the location of the specified address on map.
 - "Route Plan" screen to start navigating.



Picture3.9 Enter House No.



Picture 3.10 Enter House No.



Picture 3.11 Check Location on map

◎ In Route Plan screen, you can touch "Go" to start navigating, or start simulating navigation by touching "Simulate".

For more operation details for "Route Plan", please refer to chapter 4.

Alternative way is to locate by crossroad.

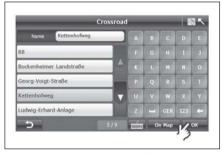
Options: after specify the road, then directly select the crossroad.

◎ In "Address Search" screen, touch the Crossroad input field and enter "Crossroad" screen. It displays a list of available croassroads along the "Senkenberganlage". Then select the desired crossroad and touch "On Map" to view the virtual road location.

© you also could search the crossroad by entering the name or the prefix, and the system will automatically list all roads matching the searching criteria. Highlight the name of the desired road and touch "OK" to return to the "Address Search" screen (Picture 3.14).



Picture 3.12 Route Plan



Picture 3.13 Crossroad Search



Picture 3.14 Address Search

3.2 SEARCH A DESTINATION BY POI

A point of interest (POI) is a location that user may find useful and interesting. POI locations are marked on map with special icons.

A-Navi System provides 23 categories of POIs, such as accommodation, petrol station, restaurants, sights, etc. POI of same category shares the same icon. If you save your own POI or favorite or address, you can select an icon for your own.

A-Navi System provides three ways to search **3.2.1 Search POI in City** POI: search POI near current position, search POI in city and search POI by telephone number.

For example: Terminal 1, Frankfurt

- 1. Touch "POI in City" in "POI Menu" screen;
- O System will enter "Country Search" screen(Picture 3.17);
- O In "Country Search" Screen, the default country is the recent search country "Ger-

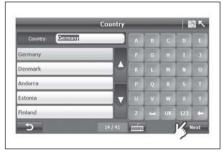
many". You could touch \int or \int to browse country list and select one among 41 European countries.



Picture 3.15 Search Menu



Picture 3.16 POI Menu



Picture 3.17 Specify the country

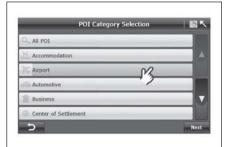
- 2. Then enter city and select one city among 3. Now select the POI category; results:
- O you can enter the whole city name or the prefix on keyboard, system will automatically list all matched results.
- O Touch "OK" and enter "POI Category Selection" screen.

If you want to change city, touch to return "City Search" screen.

- Once you confirm POI category, then touch "Next" and enter "POI Search" screen.
- 4. Select a POI among results or enter the name of desired POI;
- O In the "POI Search" screen, the system will automatically list POIs around the city default position. You could select the desired one or enter the name on keyboard.
- © when the POI is specified, you could touch "On Map" to check the POI location.



Picture 3.18 Specify the city



Picture 3.19 Select POI Category



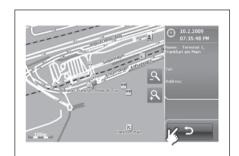
Picture 3.20 Search POI in City

9-42 NAVIGATION MANUAL

- 5. Check the location of the POI;
- to return "POI in City" screen.
- 6. Touch "OK" confirm the POI selection and 3.2.2 Search POI near Current Position enter "Route Plan" screen.
- Once you have finished the POI search, touch "OK" and the system will automatically enter "Route Plan" screen (Picture 3.22) and the POI will be displayed in the destination list.

"POI near Current Position" displays 100 POIs at most around your current position from near to far. Please notice that: When GPS fixed, "current position" is the place where your vehicle locates. When GPS does not fix, "current position" is the latest GPS-fixed place.

- 1. Select POI near current position;
- © Select "POI near Current Position" in POI Menu and enter "POI Category Selection" screen.



Picture 3.21 City POI on Map



Picture 3.22 Route Plan Screen

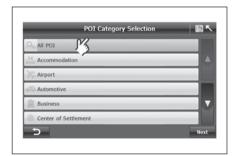


Picture 3.23 POI Menu Screen

- 2. Select one POI category.
- You could touch or to view more categories. When you confirm the selection, touch "Next" and system enter "Nearest POI list". If you are not sure of the category, you can select "All POI", then system will displays POIs of all categories near current position.
- 3. Select one POI among results and touch "OK" to enter "Route Plan" screen.
 - In "Nearest POI List" screen, you could:
 - a. select one POI (see P3.25);
 - b. touch keyboard to enter POI name or the prefix(see P3.26).
 - c. check POI location on map (see P3.27);



Picture 3.26 Enter POI Name



Picture 3.24 POI Category Selection



Picture 3.25 Nearest POI List



Picture 3.27 Nearest POI on Map

9-44 NAVIGATION MANUAL

3.2.3 Search POI by Phone

- 1. Touch "POI Search by Phone" on "POI Menu" screen.
- System will enter "City Search" screen(Picture P 3.29).
- 2. Select one country;
- ◎ In "Country Search" Screen, the default country is the recent search country
- "Germany". You could touch or to browse country list and select one among 41 European countries.
- 3. Enter the city name and choose the desired city;
- O You can enter the city name or the prefix, and the system will automatically display all the matching results.
- © Select the desired city and touch "OK" to enter "Phone No Search" screen.



Picture 3.28 POI Menu Screen



Picture 3.29 POI Menu Screen



Picture 3.30 City Search Screen

- 4. Enter Telephone number and select one 3.3 SELECT A DESTINATION IN RECENT POI in results.
- O System automatically displays City Code and POIs near the default city center.
- © Enter telephone on keyboard and touch "OK" to enter "Route Plan" screen

DESTINATIONS

A-Navi System saves 50 recent destinations at most so that you can access them quickly next time.

- 1. Touch "Recent Destination" on "Serach Menu" screen.
- O In the "Search Menu" screen (Picture 3.32), touch "Recent Destinations" to enter the "Recent Destination" screen (Picture 3.33).

- 2. Select one destination you desire.
- O Select the recent destination you want to set as destination and touch "OK".

Options: Touch "On Map" to check the location of destination

3. Touch "OK" and enter "Route Plan" screen. When successfully operated, the system will automatically return to the "Route Plan" screen and display the selected one in the destination list.



Picture 3.31 Enter POI Phone No.



Picture 3.32 Search Menu Screen



Picture 3.33 Recent Destination List

9-46 NAVIGATION MANUAL



Return to last screen.



Delete one destination.



On Map: touch and display chosen destination on map.



Confirm the selected destination.



touch and enter last screen. Gray button means this function disabled.



touch and enter next screen.

3.4 SELECT A POINT ON MAP AS **DESTINATION**

A-Navi System supports setting a destination by scrolling the map to the desired location.

- 1. Touch "Map" on "Search Menu screen";
- © The system enter the "Map Search" screen (Picture 3.35).
- 2. Scroll the map and tap on one point on
- On the "Map Search" screen (Picture 3.35), you can find places that you are interested in by zooming in/out or moving the map;



Picture 3.34 Search Menu Screen



Picture 3.35 Search destination on Map

- © Meanwhile, you can touch on the POI or road to view its information (Picture 3.36).
- O You could touch to check the other POI information when more than one POI are located at one point.
- 3. Touch "OK" and enter "Route Plan" screen.
- After you find your destination, touch "OK" to add it as a destination.

3.5 SEARCH A DESTINATION BY COORDINATES

If you know the geographic coordinates of your destination, you can navigate to the desired location by entering Coordinates.

- Touch "Coordinates" on "Search Menu" screen:
- ◎ In the "Search Menu" screen (Picture 3.37), select "Coordinates" to enter the "Coordinates Input" screen (Picture 3.38).

2. Touch "Format" to change the type of coordinates:

A-Navi System supports two kinds of coordinate format inputs: Degree Format (*Picture 3.38*) and Digital Format (*Picture 3.39*). You can touch the "*Format*" button to switch between these two formats.

3. Enter the coordinates and touch "OK".



Picture 3.36 Check POI info on Map



Picture 3.37 Search Menu Screen



Picture 3.38 Degree Format

In the Degree format, touch the "Lon" (Longitude) input area (Picture 3.38. You should input "E" (East Longitude) or "W" (West Longitude) before you input the degree number of the longitude. Before inputting the degree number of the latitude, you should input "N" (North Latitude) or "S" (South Latitude).

In the Digital format, you should input "-" (West Longitude/South Latitude) before you input the digital number of the longitude or the latitude

3.6 SELECT A DESTINATION IN ADDRESS BOOK

You can save your home address and other favorite places in Address Book (Please refer to Chapter 6.4).

- 1. Touch "Address Book" on "Search Menu" screen:
- © In the "Search Menu" screen (*Picture 3.40*), select "*Address Book*" to enter the "*Address Book*" screen (*Picture 3.41*).

- 2. Select one Address or POI and touch "OK".
- © Select one address you want to set as destination and touch "OK".

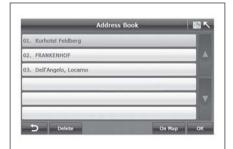
When successfully operated, the system will automatically return to the "Route Plan" screen and display the selected one in the destination list.



Picture 3.39 Digital Format



Picture 3.40 Search Menu Screen



Picture 3.41 Address Book Screen

3.7 UK POSTCODE

- Touch "UK Postcode" on "Search Menu" screen;
- ◎ In the "Search Menu" screen (*Picture 3.42*), select "*UK Postcode*" to enter the "*Postcode Input*" screen (*Picture 3.43*).
- 2. Enter UK Postcode and touch OK;
- 3. Select the desired postcode;



Picture 3.42 Search Menu Screen



Picture 3.43 Postcode Input Screen



Picture 3.44 Postcode Result

4. Check the location on map.

3.8 GO HOME

A-Navi System enables you to navigate directly to a specified home address in an easy and efficient way. In the "Main Menu" (Picture 3.46), select "Go Home" and the system will automatically start navigating to the position of My Home.

If the place of My Home has not been specified, when you touch "Go Home", the system will prompt as Picture 3. 46. O Touch "Yes", the system enters "Search Menu" screen to set up home address.



Picture 3.45 Location on map



Picture 3.46 Search Menu Screen



Picture 3.47 System Prompt

© For operation details, please refer to chapter 3.1.

O After specifying home address, system enter "Route Plan" screen.

Please refer to chapter 4 for "Route Plan" operation details.

4. ROUTE PLAN

With A-Navi system you can enter the desired destination (as described in Chapter 3) and also specify how the route to be calculated.

A-Navi System enables to set two waypoints during navigation. The system calculates a proposed route according to the sequence of the waypoints you specified, and guides you to the final destination.

After you enter waypoints/destination, the system enter "Route Plan" screen. This chapter will describe all the functions of this screen.



Picture 3.48 Set up home address



Picture 3.49 Route Plan Screen



Picture 4.1 Route Plan

4.1 DESTINATION MANAGEMENT

4.1.1 Add or delete destination(s)

A-Navi System allows you to add up to two waypoints and destinations. Usually the start point is the GPS-fixed current position.

- to search waypoint/destination (refers to Chapter 3).
- Delete: touch it and the highlight waypoint/destination in yellow is deleted.

4.1.2 Change the sequence of destination

- : touch it to move up the highlight waypoint/destination.
- : touch it to move down the highlight waypoint/destination.

Gray key means the function is disabled.

4.1.3 Display destination on map

- ◎ In "Route Plan" screen, touch **On Map** and enter the map location of the highlight waypoint/destination. Here allow you:
 - a. To pin on map and check information of the waypoint/destination.
 - b. To zoom out/in:
 - c. To draw map in all directions

4.2 ROUTE OPTIONS

A-Navi System offers you optimized settings of navigation. These settings are the basis parameters for calculating the route.

◎ Touch **Options** on "Route Plan" screen and enter "Route Options" screen(Picture 4.3).



Picture 4.2 Destination on Map



Picture 4.3 Route Options

A-Navi System enable user to select road type and routing style according to different navigation situations. The default setting is Quickest Route and Use of Highway, Use of Ferries and Allow Toll. You may touch each parameter to change the mode or style.

(1) Road type:

Use of Highway: most use of highway

Use of Highway: least use of highway

Use of Ferries: most use of ferries

Use of Ferries: least use of ferries

Avoid Toll Roads

Avoid Toll Roads: allow toll roads

(2) Routing style:

Fastest Time: calculate a quickest possible route and you could travel at or near speed limit. Shortest Distance: take you to your destination using the most direct route possible. Therefore you travel the minimum kilometers.

: turn or

: turn off

: touch and return "Route Plan" screen.

:touch to confirm route option settings and return "Route Plan" screen.

4.3 SELECT NAVIGATION MODE

A-Navi System totally has three navigation modes as below:

Route Navigation: real-time navigation among start, waypoint and destination. Simulate Navigation: lifelike simulation of the routing among start, waypoint and destination. It enables you to check POI or route information along the route. Simulate mode is mostly used when no GPS position is present.

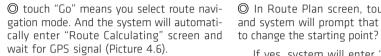
Free Navigation: real-time navigation without destination when GPS position has been fixed.

Route Navigation: real-time navigation between start and destination when GPS position has been fixed.

In the "Route Plan" screen you can select between two modes: Route Navi (Navigation) (Picture 4.4).or Simulate (Picture 4.5).



Picture 4.4 Route Plan-Go



Before route calculation finishes, you can touch the "Cancel" button at any time to end the operation.

and system will prompt that would you like

If yes, system will enter "Search Menu" (refers to Chapter 3).

If No, system will enter Picture 4.6.



Picture 4.5 Route Plan-Simulate



Picture 4.6 Calculating route



Picture 4.7 System Prompt

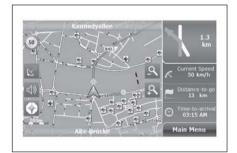
- © After route calculation and when GPS position has been fixed, the system will begin navigating.
- O Start navigation.

5. NAVIGATION

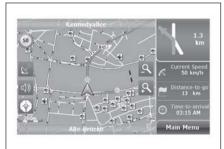
After selecting destination and planning route, the system calculates the optimized route and start navigation.

All the information you need for driving is provided clearly and comprehensively in the Route Navi Map, please refer to Chapter 2.3. Meanwhile, you can set additional navigation settings or do other possible navigation operations on Route Navi Menu.

On "Route Navi Map" screen, Touch Main menu to enter Route Navi Menu.



Picture 4.8 Start Navigating



Picture 5.1 Route Navi Map



Picture 5.2 Route Navi Menu

9-56 NAVIGATION MANUAL

5.1 MAP OPTIONS

You can access Map Options both from Free Navi Menu and Route Navi Menu.

Map Options functions are available as below:

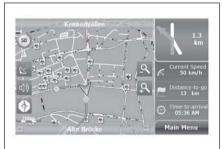
1. Auto-map rotation

"Heading Up": Rotate map according to the direction of movement.

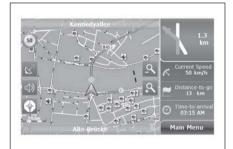
"North Up": Map is fixed to keep facing North and allows you to view driving conditions ahead.





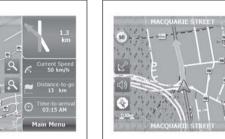


Picture 5.4 North Up

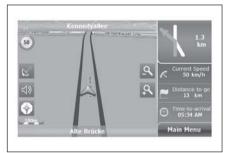


Picture 5.5 Heading Up

- 2. **2D/3D:** to switch the map between 2D and 3. **Day/Night:** to switch the map background 4. **Highway Signpost:** turn on/off the func-3D style.
 - between day and night mode.



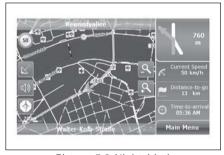
Picture 5.6 2D Map



Picture 5.7 3D Map



Picture 5.8 Day Mode



Picture 5.9 Night Mode

- tion to display highway signpost on map.
- 5. Voice Guidance
- "Voice guidance": NO voice guidance to instruct you at each turn.
- "Voice guidance": voice guidance instructs you at each turn.
- 6. Auto Zoom
- "Auto Zoom": Automatically adjusts the map scale according to driving speed and provides you a better view of the map.
- "Auto Zoom": Manually adjust the map scale.

7. Simulation Speed

This allows you to set a driving speed during a simulated trip. The ranges of simulation speed are 50km/h(mph), 100 km/h(mph), 150 km/h(mph),200 km/h(mph), 250 km/h(mph) and 300 km/h(mph).

5.2 ROUTE INFORMATION

- ◎ In the "Route Navi Menu" screen (Picture A-Navi system enables you to change desti-5.4), touch "Route Information" to display the entire route in text (Picture 5.10).
- O Route Information includes: Start, Destination, distance, next street name, distance between two turns, and turn type. For example: drive along "Kennedyallee" for 2KM and make a right turn to "Morfeldr LandstraBe".

5.3 ROUTE PLAN

- nation or add more destinations during navigation.
- O touch "Route Plan" on "Route Navi Menu" screen.
- Please refer to Chapter 4 for details.



Picture 5.10 Route Information



Picture 5.11 Route Plan

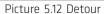
5.4 DETOUR

◎ In the "Route Navi Menu" screen, touch on "Detour" (Picture 5.2) to enter the "Detour" screen (Picture 5.12).

5.5 RECALCULATE

When you think current recommended route is not reasonable or you want to view another route between start and destination, you could touch "Recalculate" and system enter route calculation screen.







Picture 5.12 Detour



Picture 5.13 Recalculate

5.6 TERMINATE

By touching the button "Terminate", the system will stop navigation and enter Free Navigation Map.

5.7 AUTO-ROUTING

With the consideration of driving safely, A-Navi System provides the auto-routing function that works under two circumstances:

- © Auto starting navigation: After setting up a destination, touch on "Go" in the "Route Plan" screen and A-Navi System will automatically start the navigation. Below we will describe the procedure:
 - Proceed to the next step if GPS signals are received. Otherwise, wait for receiving GPS signals;
 - 2. Set the current GPS position as starting point, use the optimal route and start navigation.
- © Auto re-routing: If you have accidentally missed a recommended turning point about 100 meters, A-Navi System will activate rerouting module to calculate a new route. This guarantees you will never get lost.

6. SETTINGS

Settings open a selection of options allowing you to customize A-Navi System to your needs

There are 11 setting items can be accessed from "Settings" screen in Free Navi Menu or Route Navi Menu.



Picture 6.1 Free Navi Menu



Picture 6.3 Settings_1



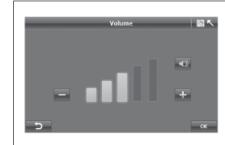
Picture 6.2 Route Navi Menu



Picture 6.4 Settings_2

6.1 VOLUME

- © touch "Volume" in the "Settings" screen (Picture 6.3) to enter the "Volume" screen (Picture 6.5).
- O touch to adjust volume to lower
- while touch to make volume be louder.
- O touch to make the system be mute.



Picture 6.5 Volume

9-62 NAVIGATION MANUAL

Once you have configured the settings, touch "OK" and the system will save your settings and return to the "Settings" screen.

6.2 SAFETY ALERT

Speeding Alert warn you when you exceed the local road speed limit. This setting allows you to decide whether you want to receive speeding alert or not.

© touch "Safety Alert" in the "Settings" screen (Picture 6.3) to enter the "Safety Alert" screen (Picture 6.6).



: turn on speeding alert

When speeding alert turns on, you can set speeding tolerance value among 0%, 5%, 10%, 15% and 20%.



Picture 6.6 Safety Alert

6.3 TRACE RECORD

A-Navi System logs all positioning information received from GPS receiver during navigation. It draws a trail of the track on map, which enables you to review the historic track information when you re-launch navigation system next time. This function is very useful when you drive in rural areas such as deserts or forests.

- By touching Record On, user switch on trace record function; while touching Record Off, user close trace record function.
- All trace record will be displayed on screen.
 If you select one record and touch Show, it will display the trace record on map.

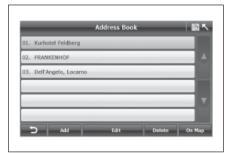
6.4 ADDRESS BOOK MANAGEMENT

A-Navi System can save up to 100 Address/ POIs.

- to search/add address/POI to Address Book.
- © touch **Delete** to delete one record in Address Book.
- On Map to view the address location on map.



Picture 6.7 Trace Record



Picture 6.8 Address Book Management

9-64 NAVIGATION MANUAL

© touch **Edit** to enter "Address Book Edit" screen.

© touch the field you want to edit, and touch the keyboard after the cursor jump to the

field. You can touch 123 or SYM to switch input format.

© touch on Picture 6.9 to enter "POI lcon Selection" screen.

When you approach the POI in address book, system will beep to remind you.

6.5 DAY /NIGHT MODE SWITCH

A-Navi System provides manually or automatically adjust map color scheme to the different lightness of the day or night.

© When "Manually" turns on, you could switch map mode between Day and Night. Manually switch function disable automatic switch, vice versa.

When "Automatic" turns on, you need to set daytime.

Daytime could be set to start from "5:00-9:00 AM" and end at "5:00-9:00 PM".



Picture 6.9 Address Book Edit



Picture 10 POI Icon Selection



Picture 6.10 Day/Night Mode Switch

6.6 SET HOME ADDRESS

O touch "Set Home Address" and enter "Search Menu" screen, more operation steps please refer to chapter 3.

6.7 GPS STATUS

touch on "GPS Status" to display the "GPS status" screen (Picture 6.12).



Map" or "Free Navi Map" to access GPS Status.

In the "GPS status" screen, you can get below information:

- 1. The GPS be active: GPS has fixed current. position. The GPS be inactive: GPS does not fix a position.
- 2. The position of satellites: the relative orientation of satellites to current position fix;

Positioning information:

- 1. Date: the date of a GPS position fix, e.g. 13-02;
- 2. Time: the time (always shown as GMT) of a GPS position fix, e.g. 15:20:34
- 3. Vehicle speed: the speed of a GPS position fix.
- 4. Altitude: the altitude of a GPS position fix.
- 5. HDOP: horizontal dilution of precision
- 6. Number of Satellites: 8
- 7. Longitude: the longitude of a GPS-fixed position, e.g. 8°34'27E
- 8. Latitude: the latitude of a GPS-fixed position, e.g. 47°24'51N;



Picture 6.11 Settings



Picture 6.12 GPS Status

9-66 NAVIGATION MANUAL

6.8 LANGUAGE

O you can select voice/program language by touching the language icon.

O touch "Ok" and return to Settings.



: blue highlight button means the language be selected.



gray button means disable language.

6.9 RIGHT/LEFT-HAND DRIVE

on and vice versa.

For better eyesight, A-Navi System provides different UI layout for Left /Right -hand Drive drivers.

O If you see , Right-hand drive function is off; touch to switch Right-hand Drive



Picture 6.15 Left-hand Drive



Picture 6.13 Select Language



Picture 6.14 Settings_2



Picture 6.16 Right-hand Drive

6.10 MEASURE UNIT

O You can set the distance unit to be kilometer or mile.

If you see kilometre, current measure unit is mile;

touch to switch Kilometer and vice versa.

6.11 DRIVING SPEED DISPLAY ON/OFF

Generally vehicle speed displays on Navigation Map.

However vehicle speed is not always right because of GPS signal deviation. This function enables you to turn on/off speed display function.

If you see , vehicle speed doesn't dis-

play; touch to turn on vehicle speed display function and vice versa.

6.12 ABOUT

About provide information about A-Navi System:

- a. Product Model
- b. Software Version
- c. Map Data Version



Picture 6.17 Settings_2



Picture 6.18 Settings_2



Picture 6.19 About

7 APPENDIX

7.1 ATTENTION

It is not a system failure under circumstances listed below:

Situations that can affect the GPS positioning:

- Sometimes, when you are driving on the highway/viaduct, the floating point swings.
- When you are driving on a very steep road.
- When you are driving on spiral road, you
 will find that the floating point swings. It
 is nothing to do with the radius of the road
 and the driving speed of your vehicle. One
 reason might be that the real road condition may differ from the information of the
 electronic map.
- When you make a right/left turn to enter a road and that has parallel roads nearby (less than 50 m distance), you might find that the floating point may go to another road.

- When driving on a wide road in a snaky line, you may experience that the floating point may swing due to the mismatch of real distance.
- Before returning to a ground road after you have been driving in an underground car park or a spiral path of the multi-level car park, you will find that the floating point may swing. When your car is in a rotary elevator, the arrow of the floating point may not point to the right direction.
- Providing voice prompt at a branching path ahead.
- The guided distance may deviate from the actual distance rate.

When any of those situations occurs, the GPS satellite will automatically adjust the current position fix if you keep driving.

Problems caused by map files:

- When you return from a road which is newly constructed to a road recorded in map file, you may find floating point swings because the map file may not reflect the real road conditions. After you keep driving for a while, the system will adjust it to the right position using GPS signal information
- No through way due to road closure or pedestrian path
- Open of a new road and closure of old road;
- Guide to a no-through way;
- Route re-computed again without changing the proposed route;
- Guide to a normal road instead of a viaduct, or vice versa;
- If there are only small lanes without a normal road near the destination, the system will only guide you to a place near to your destination;

- Instruct you to make a U-turn;
- · No indication at a branching road;
- Turning instruction mismatch the real road condition;
- No indication of direction or voice prompt about entrance/exit while guiding on highway/expressway.
- Schematic map may mismatch real road conditions.

Places having difficulties to receive GPS signals

- In tunnels;
- Between high buildings;
- Under viaducts;
- In trees/forests;

When using external GPS antenna, we recommend that you place it on the roof of the car. If there is rack on the roof of your car, please make sure to separate the rack and the antenna.

GPS is managed by the department of defense of USA. It may purposely reduce the accuracy of the GPS signals so that the car may swing.

Use Notice

- The floating point may swing before the GPS signal is received when you turn the power on.
- The floating point may swing when you use the system at the first time after installation.
- The system will automatically adjust its position and direction using GPS signals when the floating point mismatches real condition.

7.2 POI ICONS

Icon	Name	lcon	Name
0	All POI		Government Office
K	Airport		Medical
	Automotive	M	Museum
	Business		Music Center
	Company	×	Restaurants
0	Center of Settlement	H	Accommodation
()	Finance	Ţ	Night Life

Icon	Name	Icon	Name
P	Parking		Services
	Petrol Station	Eggs.	Sights
	Recreation		Shopping
P	Police Station	800	Z00
	Railway Station		

10 INDEX

10-2 INDEX

A	Audio system	Changing engine oil and filter 6-8
ABS warning lamp 2-8	RDS radio and CD player 4-17	Charging system warning lamp 2-11
Accessory power outlet2-65	RDS radio and CD-changer 4-32	Child restraint 1-10
Adding brake/clutch fluid 6-15	Automatic climate control 4-10	Cigar lighter and accessory
Adjusting the mirrors 3-7	Automatic transaxle 3-15, 3-16	power outlet 2-65
Adjusting the steering wheel 3-10	Automatic transaxle fluid 6-17	Climate control
Air bag 1-28	Selector lever position indicator 2-14	Air distribution mode knob 4-4
Curtain air bags1-32	Auxiliary heater 4-9	Control panel 4-3
Driver's air bag 1-29		Fan control knob 4-4
Front passenger's air bag 1-29	В	Recirculation mode button 4-5
On-off switch 1-38	Battery 6-21	Temperature control knob 4-3
Side air bags 1-31	Jump starting 5-16	Coin storage 2-71
Warning lamp 2-8	Rundown protection2-34	Console box 2-70
Air cleaner 6-20	Transmitter battery replacement 2-52	Coolant 6-13
Air conditioner filter6-29	Bonnet 2-61	Cruise control 2-45
Air conditioning 4-6	Brake and clutch fluid 6-15	Indicator 2-21
Air vents 4-2	Adding brake/clutch fluid 6-15	Cup holders 2-69
All-Wheel Drive (AWD) system 3-26	Brake-transaxle shift interlock (BTSI) 3-18	
warning lamp2-21	Brakes 3-20	D
Always wear your safety belts 1-2	Anti-lock brake system 3-25	Daytime running lights2-34
Antenna 2-75	Brake pedal 6-23	Defrosting and demisting 4-9
Anti-lock brake system 3-25	Brake system warning lamp 2-9	Descent Control System (DCS) 3-28
Braking with ABS3-26	Overheated brakes 3-21	DCS active and not ready/
Warning lamp 2-8	Parking brake 3-22	warning lamp 2-17
Approaching lighting2-34	Wet brakes 3-21	Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) 6-23
Aquaplaning 3-36		Indicator 2-23
Ashtrays 2-67	С	Differential carrier assembly fluid 6-22
Assist grip with coat hook 2-73	Card holder 2-70	Digital clock2-65
	Central door locking system 2-55	Dimmer switch 2-33

Dome lamp2-62	ESC active and warning lamp 2-17	Bulb replacement 6-38
Bulb replacement 6-40	ESC off button 3-28	Front passenger's safety belt
Door locks 2-53	ESC off indicator2-17	warning lamp2-45
Central door locking system 2-55	Emergency towing 5-20	Front passenger seat undertray 2-71
Child security door lock 2-56	Engine braking 3-31	Front seat occupants 1-6
Deadlock 2-55	Engine compartment 6-5	Front seats 1-20
Door open warning lamp2-20	Engine coolant temperature	Driver's seat height adjustment . 1-21
Door-to-door light function 2-34	warning lamp2-20	Driver's seat lumbar support 1-21
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 2-27	Engine exhaust 3-45	Passenger's seat folding1-22
Compass 2-30	Engine oil 6-8	Reclining adjustment 1-20
FATC panel 2-32	Changing engine oil and filter 6-9	Slide adjustment 1-20
Trip computer 2-28	Change engine oil lamp 2-21	Fuel 3-4
Driver's check list 6-4	Checking engine oil level 6-8	Filling the fuel tank
Driving precautions 3-2	Engine oil level warning lamp 2-26	Fuel filling from drums or
Driving tips 3-31	Engine oil life system 6-12	portable containers 3-7
Driving your vehicle 3-15	Engine oil pressure warning lamp 2-12	Fuel for diesel engine 3-5
	Engine oil specification 8-4	Fuel recommendations 3-4
E	Environmental protection 3-46	Fuel economy mode(ECO) 3-20
Electric folding mirror 3-8	·	Fuel economy lamp 2-7
Electric seat1-23		Fuel gauge 2-7
Height adjustment 1-23	F	Fuses 6-30
Reclining adjustment 1-23	Filling the fuel tank	Auxiliary engine room fuse block 6-35
Slide adjustment 1-23	Fluid chart 8-3	Engine room fuse block 6-34
Electric sunroof2-62	Folding rear seatback1-24	Fuse block 6-30
Electric windows 2-57	Folding the 3rd row seat 1-28	Interior fuse block 6-33
Auto down 2-58	Front door step lamp2-63	
Lock button 2-59	Bulb replacement 6-40	G
Electro-chromic mirror 3-10	Front fog lamp 2-37	Glove box 2-69
Flectronic Stability Control (ESC) 3-26	Indicator 2-14	

10-4 INDEX

H Hazard warning flasher button 2-43 Head restraints 1-19 Headlamp 2-32 Bulb replacement 6-36 Headlamp levelling switch 2-33 Washer 2-43 Heating 4-7 High beam indicator 2-16 High beam switch 2-36 Horn 2-68 How to change a flat tyre 5-11	Jump starting	Lower anchor and top tether anchor for child restraints
1	L	Mirrors 3-7
Identification numbers 8-2	Lamps 6-36	
Ignition switch 3-11	Dome lamp / Map light 6-39	N
Immobilizer system 3-13	Front door step lamp 6-40	Navigation System 9-2
Warning lamp 2-18	Front fog lamps 6-38	
Indicators and warning lamps 2-7	Front turn signal lamps 6-37	0
Indicator stalk 2-35	Headlamps 6-36	Octane rating 3-4
Inside rearview mirror 3-9	High-mounted brake lamp 6-39	Odometer / trip odometer2-5
Instruments and controls -	Number plate lamp 6-39	Operating tips for ventilation
Quick view2-3	Parking lamps 6-37	system 4-16
Instruments cluster 2-4	Reverse, tail, brake, rear turn	Outside rearview mirror 3-7
Interior courtesy lamps2-62	signal and rear fog 6-38	Outside temperature display 4-15
Dome lamp 2-62	Lamps on reminder 2-34	Overheating 5-23
Map light2-62	Light switch 3-31	
	Low fuel level warning lamp 2-7	

indicators 2-16

_		
Р	Roof rack 2-74	Starting the engine with jumper
Parking assistance system 3-33	Running-in 3-2	cables 5-16
Warning lamp 2-18		Sun visors 2-73
Parking brake 3-22	S	Sunglass holder 2-63
Winter parking tip 3-25	Safety belt	Sunlight sensor 4-10
Parking the vehicle 3-32	Care 6-42	Supplemental restraint system 1-28
Passing light switch 2-36	Maintain your safety belts 1-8	Switches and controls 2-32
Power outside rearview mirrors 3-7	Pregnant women and safety	
Power steering fluid 6-17	belts 1-10	T
Adding power steering fluid 6-18	Safety belt height adjustment 1-9	Tachometer2-5
Checking power steering fluid	Safety belt pretensioner 1-8	Tailgate 2-59
level 6-17	Driver's safety belt reminder 2-15	Open warning lamp 2-20
Pregnant women and safety belts 1-10	Three-point safety belts 1-6	Window release button 2-60
,	Safety precautions 6-2	Tailgate window wiper and washer 2-41
R	Seat heater switch 2-68	Rear smart wiper2-42
Rear fog lamp2-37	Security indicator	Temperature gauge 2-6
Indicator 2-15	Service vehicle soon lamp 2-19	Temperature sensor 4-10
Bulb replacement 6-38	Severe conditions	Third row seat occupants 1-6
Rear seat occupants 1-6	Side air bags 1-31	Folding 1-28
Rear seats	Spare tyre, jack and vehicle tools 5-2	Three-point safety belts 1-6
Reclining adjustment 1-26	Specifications 8-5	Towing the vehicle 5-18
Folding 1-24	Vehicle specifications 8-5	Trailer towing 3-37
Folding the 3rd row seat 1-28	Speedometer2-5	Trailer indicator 2-24
Double folding 1-26		Transaxle
Rear window and outside mirror	Speed sensitive power steering system	Automatic transaxle 3-15, 3-16
defroster button 2-43	3-11 SCDC warning lamp	
Recirculation 4-5	SSPS warning lamp	Manual transaxle
	Starting the engine	Turbocharger system 3-30
Rocking your vehicle 5-22	Starting the diesel engine 3-14	Turn signal / hazard warning flasher

10-6 INDEX

Tyre	W
Chains 6-28 Changing a flat tyre 5-11 Inflation pressure 8-8 Rotation 6-27 Sealant and compressor kit 5-3 Temporary spare tyre 6-28 Tread wear indicator 6-26 Winter tyres 6-27	Water in fuel warning lamp
Under floor storage 2-72	Wiper activated lighting 2-35
V	
Vehicle care 6-40 Care and cleaning of the exterior 6-43 Care and cleaning of the interior 6-41 Cleaning agents 6-40 Cleaning the outside of the windscreen 6-42 Corrosion protection 6-44 Glass surfaces 6-42 Safety belt care 6-42 Vehicle specifications 8-5 Ventilation 4-8	
1 0	